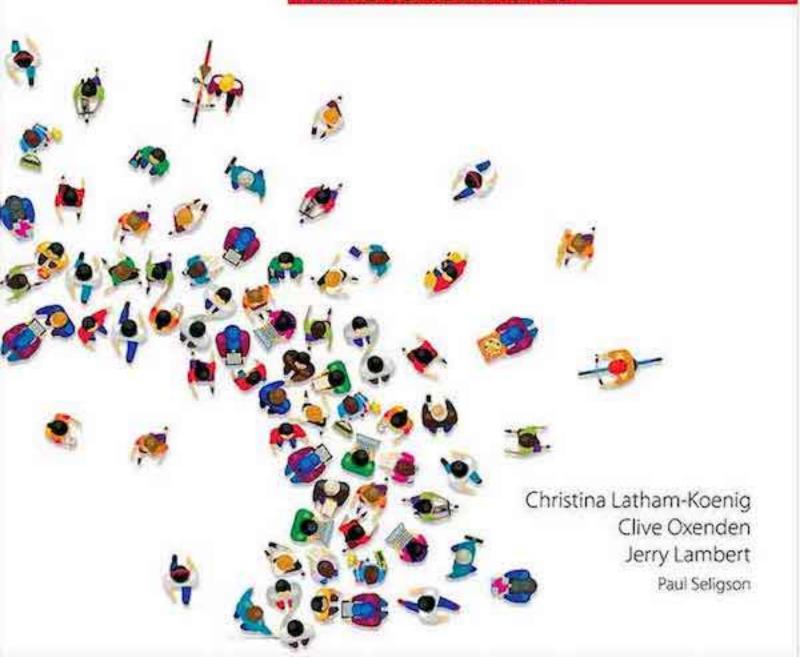
American English File Third Edition

WITH ONLINE PRACTICE



American English File Third Edition

Christina Latham-Koenig Clive Oxenden Jerry Lambert Paul Seligson

Paul Seligson and Clive Oxenden are the original co-authors of English File 1 and English File 2 OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

ZABAN

Contents

	GRAMMAR		VOCABULARY	PRONUNCIATION	
1				SAPE PLANE	
6	A Welcome to the class	verb be +, subject pronouns: I, you, etc.	days of the week, numbers 0–20	vowel sounds, word stress	
8	B One world	verb be - and ?	countries, numbers 21–100	/ə/, consonant sounds /tʃ/, /ʃ/, /dʒ/, word stress	
10	C What's your email?	possessive adjectives: my, your, etc.	classroom language	/ou/, /u/, /ar/, the alphabet, sentence stress	
12	Practical English Episode 1	checking in V in a hotel			
2					
14	A Are you neat or messy?	singular and plural nouns	things, in, on, under	final -s and -es	
16	B Made in America	adjectives	colors, adjectives, modifiers: very / really	long and short vowel sounds	
18	C Slow down!	imperatives, let's	feelings	linking	
20	Review and Check 1&2				
3					
22	A America: the good and the bad	simple present 🛨 and 🗔	verb phrases: cook dinner, etc.	third person -s	
24	B 9 to 5	simple present ?	jobs	/ər/	
26	C Love me, love my dog	word order in questions	question words	sentence stress	
28	Practical English Episode 2	buying a coffee V telling t	he time		
4					
30	A Family photos	possessive 's, Whose?	family	/ʌ/, the letter o	
32	B From morning to night	prepositions of time (at, in, on) and place (at, in, to)	daily routine	linking	
34	C Blue Zones	position of adverbs, expressions of frequency	months, adverbs and expressions of frequency	the letter h	
36	Review and Check 3&4				
5		。 [1] [1] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2] [2			
38	A Vote for me!	can / can't	verb phrases: buy a newspaper, etc.	sentence stress	
40	B A quiet life?	present continuous: be + verb + -ing	noise: verbs and verb phrases	/ŋ/	
42	C A city for all seasons	simple present or present continuous?	the weather and seasons	places in Chicago	
44	Practical English Episode 3	buying clothes V clothes			
6					
46	A A North African story	object pronouns: me, you, him, etc.	words in a story	/aɪ/, /ɪ/, and /i/	
48	B The second Friday in July	like + (verb + -ing)	the date, ordinal numbers	/ð/ and /θ/, saying the date	
50	C Making music	review: be or do?	music	/y/, giving opinions	
52	Review and Check 5&6				

<u>digi</u> ZABAN

Set			GRAMMAR	VOCABULARY	PRONUNCIATION
simple past: regular verbs go, have, get sentence stress C Happy New Year? simple past: regular verbs go, have, get sentence stress Practical English Episode 4 asking for directions V directions 8 62 A A murder mystery simple past: regular and irregular verbs simple past verbs irregular verbs simple past verbs simple verbs simp	7				THE RESERVE OF THE PARTY OF THE
Serview and Check 98:10 To Happy New Year? simple past: irregular verbs go, have, get sentence stress sking for directions V directions 8 62 A A murder mystery simple past: regular and irregular verbs simple past verbs irregular verbs simple past verbs irregular verbs simple past verbs simple past verbs simple past verbs irregular verbs simple past verbs sentence stress simple past verbs simple past verbs sentence stress senten	54	A Selfies	simple past of be: was / were	word formation: write → writer	sentence stress
8 8 62 A A murder mystery simple past: regular and irregular verbs simple past verbs irregular on there is / there are, some / any + plural nouns there was / there were prepositions: place and movement 68 Review and Check 788 9 70 A #mydinnerlastnight countable / uncountable nouns, a / an, some / any food containers linking, If and is / an, som	56	B Wrong name, wrong place	simple past: regular verbs	past time expressions	-ed endings
simple past regular and irregular with a history irregular and irregular and irregular with a history irregular and irregular and irregular with a history interest of there are, some / any the house here is / there are, some / any the house here was / there was / there were prepositions: place and movement silent letters movement wowment with a history interest was / there was / there were prepositions: place and movement wowment wowment with a history interest was / an, some / any prepositions: place and movement wowment wowment with a history interest was interest. A movement was interest was interest was interest was interest was interest. A movement was interest was interest was interest. A movement was interest was interest was interest. A movement was interest was interest was interest was interest. A movement was interest was interest was interest was interest. A movement was interest was interest. A movement was interest was interest. A movement was interest was interest was interest. A movement was interest. A movement was interest was interest. A movement was interest.	58	C Happy New Year?	simple past: irregular verbs	go, have, get	sentence stress
simple past regular and irregular verbs simple past verbs regular and irregular verbs irregular past participles irregular past participles irregular past participles irregular past participles irregular verbs irregular verbs irregular verbs irregular verbs irregular past participles irregular verbs irr	60	Practical English Episode 4	asking for directions V directions	tions	
simple past regular and irregular verbs simple past verbs regular and irregular verbs irregular past participles irregular past participles irregular past participles irregular past participles irregular verbs irregular verbs irregular verbs irregular verbs irregular past participles irregular verbs irr	Q				
there is / there are, some / any + plural nouns there was / there were prepositions: place and silent letters Review and Check 7&8 Practical English Episode 5 A Culture shock active was definite article: the or no the sarpon active and the internet stress Expressions be going to (predictions) Expressions connected speech A Culture shock active short of the was / the not the sarpon and the internet the stress irregular past participles B Experiences or things? A I've seen it ten times! present perfect irregular past participles sentence stress Practical English Episode 6 B He's been everywhere! present perfect or simple past? Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs Inch in the house propositions: place and silent letters as silent letters as silent letters as silent letters and silent letters as silent letters and s		A A musdes musters	size a la manta de sulta de d	in and a wards	ALL LEGGES CONT.
# plural nouns there was / there were prepositions: place and movement # plural nouns there was / there were prepositions: place and movement # preciple and movement # precipl	02	A A murder mystery		irregular verbs	simple past verbs
Practical English Episode 5 C The fortune-teller be going to (predictions) Review and Check 98:10 10 11 12 13 4 C Hours shock adverbs (manner and modifiers) C The fortune-teller be going to (predictions) B Experiences or things? C How smart is your phone? Practical English Episode 6 B Experiences or things? Practical English Episode 6 B I've seen it ten times! Present perfect irregular past participles irregular past participles File interview Review and Check 118:12 Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs 166 Sound Bank	64	B A house with a history		the house	/ɛr/ and /ɪr/
70 A #mydinnerlastnight countable / uncountable nouns, a / an, some / any 71 B White gold quantifiers: how much / how many, a lot of, etc. 72 C Facts and figures comparative adjectives high numbers /asi/, sentence stress 73 Practical English Episode 5 ordering a meal V understanding a menu 10	66	C Haunted rooms	there was / there were		silent letters
70 A #mydinnerlastnight countable / uncountable nouns, a / an, some / any 72 B White gold quantifiers: how much / how many, a lot of, etc. 74 C Facts and figures comparative adjectives high numbers /ar/, sentence stress 75 Practical English Episode 5 ordering a meal V understanding a menu 10 78 A The most dangerous place 80 B Five continents in a day be going to (plans), future time expressions 82 C The fortune-teller be going to (predictions) verb phrases word stress 84 Review and Check 9&10 11 86 A Culture shock adverbs (manner and modifiers) verbs that take the infinitive verbs that take the infinitive verbs that take the infinitive phones and the internet the phones and the internet the practical English Episode 6 getting to the airport V public transportation 12 94 A I've seen it ten times! present perfect irregular past participles irregular past participles review: question formation File interview Review and Check 11&12 Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs 80 Sound Bank 106 Sound Bank Writing 148 Vocabulary Bank 166 Sound Bank	68	Review and Check 7&8			
70 A #mydinnerlastnight countable / uncountable nouns, a / an, some / any 72 B White gold quantifiers: how much / how many, a lot of, etc. 74 C Facts and figures comparative adjectives high numbers /ar/, sentence stress 75 Practical English Episode 5 ordering a meal V understanding a menu 10 78 A The most dangerous place 80 B Five continents in a day be going to (plans), future time expressions 82 C The fortune-teller be going to (predictions) verb phrases word stress 84 Review and Check 9&10 11 86 A Culture shock adverbs (manner and modifiers) verbs that take the infinitive verbs that take the infinitive verbs that take the infinitive phones and the internet the phones and the internet the practical English Episode 6 getting to the airport V public transportation 12 94 A I've seen it ten times! present perfect irregular past participles irregular past participles review: question formation File interview Review and Check 11&12 Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs 80 Sound Bank 106 Sound Bank Writing 148 Vocabulary Bank 166 Sound Bank	9				
The comparative adjectives high numbers and place in the		A #mydinnerlastnight		food and drink	the letters <i>ea</i>
10 78 A The most dangerous place 80 B Five continents in a day be going to (plans), future time expressions 82 C The fortune-teller be going to (predictions) verb phrases word stress 84 Review and Check 9&10 11 86 A Culture shock adverbs (manner and modifiers) common adverbs connected speech werbs that take the infinitive weak to, sentence stress 99 C How smart is your phone? definite article: the or no the phones and the internet the 92 Practical English Episode 6 getting to the airport V public transportation 12 94 A I've seen it ten times! present perfect irregular past participles sentence stress 96 B He's been everywhere! present perfect or simple past? learning irregular verbs irregular past participles 97 C The American English File interview 98 Review and Check 11&12 190 C Review and Check 11&12 191 C Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs 192 C Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs 193 Writing 148 Vocabulary Bank 166 Sound Bank	72	B White gold		food containers	linking, /ʃ/ and /s/
78 A The most dangerous place 80 B Five continents in a day be going to (plans), future time expressions 82 C The fortune-teller be going to (predictions) verb phrases word stress 84 Review and Check 9&10 11 86 A Culture shock adverbs (manner and modifiers) common adverbs connected speech 88 B Experiences or things? verbs + infinitive verbs that take the infinitive weak to, sentence stress 90 C How smart is your phone? definite article: the or no the phones and the internet the 91 92 Practical English Episode 6 getting to the airport V public transportation 12 94 A I've seen it ten times! present perfect or simple past? learning irregular verbs irregular past participles 96 B He's been everywhere! present perfect or simple past? review: question formation File interview 100 Review and Check 11&12 102 Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs 105 Irregular verbs 106 Sound Bank	74	C Facts and figures	comparative adjectives	high numbers	/ər/, sentence stress
A The most dangerous place 80 B Five continents in a day be going to (plans), future time expressions 82 C The fortune-teller be going to (predictions) verb phrases word stress 84 Review and Check 9&10 11	76	Practical English Episode 5	ordering a meal V understan	ding a menu	
A The most dangerous place 80 B Five continents in a day be going to (plans), future time expressions 82 C The fortune-teller be going to (predictions) verb phrases word stress 84 Review and Check 9&10 11	10				
B Five continents in a day be going to (plans), future time expressions connected speech Review and Check 9&10 C How smart is your phone? Practical English Episode 6 B He's been everywhere! B He's been everywhere! To The American English File interview Review and Check 11&12 Communication 124 Grammar Bank Writing Werb sping to (plans), future time city vacations sentence stress word stress word stress connected speech words tress word stress connected speech weak to, sentence stress the phones and the internet the present perfect irregular past participles sentence stress irregular verbs irregular verbs irregular verbs irregular verbs irregular verbs review: question formation 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs Writing 188 Vocabulary Bank 165 Sound Bank		A The weet decrease		11. 9.19	
expressions 82 C The fortune-teller be going to (predictions) verb phrases word stress 84 Review and Check 9&10 11 86 A Culture shock adverbs (manner and modifiers) common adverbs connected speech 88 B Experiences or things? verbs + infinitive verbs that take the infinitive weak to, sentence stress 90 C How smart is your phone? definite article: the or no the phones and the internet the 92 Practical English Episode 6 getting to the airport V public transportation 12 94 A I've seen it ten times! present perfect irregular past participles sentence stress 96 B He's been everywhere! present perfect or simple past? learning irregular verbs irregular past participles 97 C The American English File interview 180 Review and Check 11&12 191 Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs 192 Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Sound Bank	70		superiative adjectives	places and buildings	consonant groups
Review and Check 9&10 11 86 A Culture shock adverbs (manner and modifiers) common adverbs connected speech 88 B Experiences or things? verbs + infinitive verbs that take the infinitive weak to, sentence stress 90 C How smart is your phone? definite article: the or no the phones and the internet the 92 Practical English Episode 6 getting to the airport V public transportation 12 94 A I've seen it ten times! present perfect irregular past participles sentence stress 96 B He's been everywhere! present perfect or simple past? learning irregular verbs irregular past participles 98 C The American English File interview 100 Review and Check 11&12 102 Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs 113 Writing 148 Vocabulary Bank 166 Sound Bank	80	B Five continents in a day		city vacations	sentence stress
86 A Culture shock adverbs (manner and modifiers) common adverbs connected speech 88 B Experiences or things? verbs + infinitive verbs that take the infinitive weak to, sentence stress 90 C How smart is your phone? definite article: the or no the phones and the internet the 92 Practical English Episode 6 getting to the airport V public transportation 12 94 A I've seen it ten times! present perfect irregular past participles sentence stress 96 B He's been everywhere! present perfect or simple past? learning irregular verbs irregular past participles 98 C The American English File interview review: question formation 100 Review and Check 11&12 102 Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs 116 Sound Bank	82	C The fortune-teller	be going to (predictions)	verb phrases	word stress
A Culture shock B Experiences or things? verbs + infinitive verbs that take the infinitive weak to, sentence stress C How smart is your phone? definite article: the or no the phones and the internet the Practical English Episode 6 getting to the airport V public transportation 12 4 A I've seen it ten times! present perfect irregular past participles sentence stress B He's been everywhere! present perfect or simple past? learning irregular verbs irregular past participles C The American English File interview Review and Check 11&12 Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs Writing 148 Vocabulary Bank 166 Sound Bank	84	Review and Check 9&10			
A Culture shock B Experiences or things? verbs + infinitive verbs that take the infinitive weak to, sentence stress C How smart is your phone? definite article: the or no the phones and the internet the Practical English Episode 6 getting to the airport V public transportation 12 4 A I've seen it ten times! present perfect irregular past participles sentence stress B He's been everywhere! present perfect or simple past? learning irregular verbs irregular past participles C The American English File interview Review and Check 11&12 Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs Writing 148 Vocabulary Bank 166 Sound Bank	11				
B Experiences or things? verbs + infinitive verbs that take the infinitive weak to, sentence stress definite article: the or no the phones and the internet the getting to the airport V public transportation 12 94 A I've seen it ten times! present perfect irregular past participles sentence stress present perfect or simple past? learning irregular verbs irregular past participles 98 C The American English File interview 100 Review and Check 11&12 102 Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs 105 Irregular verbs 106 Sound Bank	100000	A Cultura shook			
C How smart is your phone? definite article: the or no the phones and the internet the getting to the airport V public transportation 12 94 A I've seen it ten times! present perfect irregular past participles sentence stress 96 B He's been everywhere! present perfect or simple past? learning irregular verbs irregular past participles 98 C The American English File interview 100 Review and Check 11&12 102 Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs 113 Writing 148 Vocabulary Bank 166 Sound Bank					
Practical English Episode 6 getting to the airport V public transportation 12 94 A I've seen it ten times! present perfect irregular past participles sentence stress 96 B He's been everywhere! present perfect or simple past? learning irregular verbs irregular past participles 98 C The American English File interview 100 Review and Check 11&12 102 Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs 113 Writing 148 Vocabulary Bank 166 Sound Bank					·
94 A I've seen it ten times! present perfect irregular past participles sentence stress 96 B He's been everywhere! present perfect or simple past? learning irregular verbs irregular past participles 98 C The American English review: question formation File interview 100 Review and Check 11&12 102 Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs 113 Writing 148 Vocabulary Bank 166 Sound Bank					the
94 A I've seen it ten times! present perfect irregular past participles sentence stress 96 B He's been everywhere! present perfect or simple past? learning irregular verbs irregular past participles 98 C The American English review: question formation File interview 100 Review and Check 11&12 102 Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs 113 Writing 148 Vocabulary Bank 166 Sound Bank		Tractical Eligibilit Episode o	getting to the airport v publi	c transportation	
96 B He's been everywhere! present perfect or simple past? learning irregular verbs irregular past participles 98 C The American English review: question formation 100 Review and Check 11&12 102 Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs 113 Writing 148 Vocabulary Bank 166 Sound Bank	12			THE RESERVE	
98 C The American English review: question formation File interview 100 Review and Check 11&12 102 Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs 113 Writing 148 Vocabulary Bank 166 Sound Bank	94	A I've seen it ten times!	present perfect	irregular past participles	sentence stress
File interview 100 Review and Check 11&12 102 Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs 113 Writing 148 Vocabulary Bank 166 Sound Bank	96	B He's been everywhere!	present perfect or simple past?	learning irregular verbs	irregular past participles
102 Communication 124 Grammar Bank 165 Irregular verbs 113 Writing 148 Vocabulary Bank 166 Sound Bank	98		review: question formation		nine (L. 16.
113 Writing 148 Vocabulary Bank 166 Sound Bank	100	Review and Check 11&12			
113 Writing 148 Vocabulary Bank 166 Sound Bank	102	Communication	124 Grammar Bank	165 Irregular verbs	
,	113		Grannia Bank		
			Totabulary balls	100 Journa Balik	

Course overview

American English File

Welcome to

American English File

Third Edition. This is
how to use the Student
Book, Online Practice,
and the Workbook in and
out of class.



American File Third Edition WORKBOOK Sold separate Confidence Co

Student Book

All the language and skills you need to improve your English, with Grammar, Vocabulary, Pronunciation, and skills work in every File.

Use your Student Book in class with your teacher.

Workbook

Grammar, Vocabulary, and Pronunciation practice for every lesson.

Use your Workbook for homework or for self-study to practice language and to check your progress.

Go to
americanenglishfileonline.com
and use the code on
your Access Card to
log into the Online
Practice.





LOOK AGAIN

- Review the language from every lesson.
- Watch the video and listen to all the class audio as many times as you like.

PRACTICE

- Improve your skills with extra Reading,
 Writing, Listening, and Speaking practice.
- Use the interactive video to practice Practical English.

CHECK YOUR PROGRESS

- Test yourself on the language from the File and get instant feedback.
 - Try a Challenge activity.

SOUND BANK

 Use the Sound Bank video to practice and improve your pronunciation of English sounds.

Online Practice

Look again at Student Book language you want to review or that you missed in class, do extra **Practice** activities, and **Check your progress** on what you learned so far.

Use the Online Practice to learn outside the classroom and get instant feedback on your progress.

Welcome to the class

Hi, I'm Matt. What's your name?

Sally. Nice to meet you.

G verb be ±, subject pronouns: I, you, etc. V days of the week, numbers 0-20 P vowel sounds, word stress

LISTENING & SPEAKING

1.2 Look at the photo story and listen to the conversations. Match the names to people A-D.

Ben Carla Matt Sally

- Listen again and fill in the blanks.
 - 1 Teacher Hello, everybody. Welcome to the class. I'm Carla. I'm your teacher.

2	Matt	Hi, I'm N	latt. What's your ' <u>n</u>	ame :
	Sally	Sally.		
	Matt	2	?	
	Sally	Sally!		

- Matt What's your phone 3_____? It's 555-413-2456. Sally
- Ben ___, Matt.

Matt Hello. This is Sally. She's in my salsa class.

Nice to meet you. My name's Ben.

Sally Nice to 5_ _____ you, too.

Matt Bye, Sally.

Sally Goodbye, Matt. Bye, Ben.

- 5 Ben Hi, Sally.
 - Sally Ben! Are you in the salsa class, too?

Yes, I am. How are 6_____?

Sally I'm very well, 7_____ you. And you? _, thanks. ... Great! You're my Ben

partner!

Sally Yes! See you later, Matt.

- **1.3** Listen and repeat the conversations. Copy the rhythm.
- Fill in the blanks with a word from the list.

Bye	Fine	Hi	I'm	Thanks
Hello) = <u>Hi</u>			Thank you =
My name's =				Goodbye =
Very	well =			

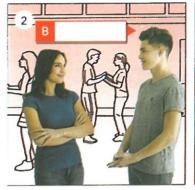
Introduce yourself to other students.

Hello, I'm Antonio. What's your name?)

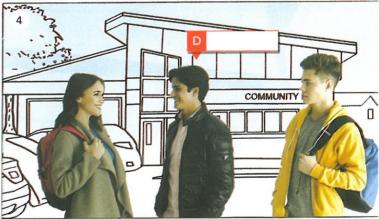
(Mia. Nice to meet you.

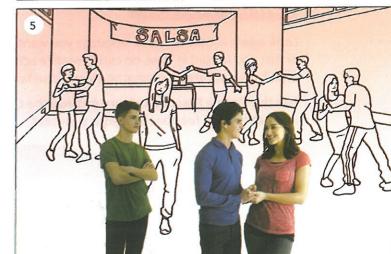
Nice to meet you, too.)











2 GRAMMAR verb be +, subject pronouns

- a Complete the sentences with 'm, 's, or 're.
 - 1 I am Carla. = I'm Carla.
 - 2 | am Matt. = |___ Matt.
 - 3 My name is Ben. = My name Ben.
 - 4 You are my partner. = You____ my partner.
 - 5 She is in my salsa class. = She____ in my salsa class.

b @p.124 Grammar Bank 1A

- c 1.5 Listen and repeat the pronouns and contractions.
 - 1)) I, I'm (I, I'm
- d 1.6 Listen. Say the contraction.
 - 1)) I am (I'm
- e In pairs, try to remember the names in your class. Say He's / She's ______.
- f Stand up and speak to other students.

Hi, Mia. How are you? (I'm fine, thanks. And you?

3 PRONUNCIATION vowel sounds, word stress

Vowel sounds

In American English, vowels (a, e, i, o, and u) and combinations of vowels (e.g., ea, ai) can be pronounced in different ways. Sometimes they are short sounds (e.g., it, well), but sometimes they are long sounds (e.g., e = he) or diphthongs (e.g., i = hi).

a \bigcirc 1.7 Listen to the words and sounds. Then listen and repeat.

fish	tree	cat	egg	train	bike
it this	he we	am thanks	egg very well	they name	bi ke hi I
in	meet	Sally	welcome	later	by

b 1.8 Listen and write the words.

O Word stress

Multisyllable words have one stressed syllable. good|bye so|rry wel|come

c <u>1.9</u> Listen and <u>un</u>derline the stressed syllable in these words.

air|port com|pu|ter e|mail ho|tel in|ter|net mu|se|um pas|ta piz|za sa|lad sand|wich u|ni|ver|si|ty web|site d Write the words from c in the chart.

 food	★ technology	⊞ places
		airport

- e In pairs, write more words that you know in each column. How do you pronounce them?
- **4 VOCABULARY** days of the week, numbers 0–20

. . . .

а		took at the blank		icture.	Listen a	nd	\
			COMMU	NITY HALL		, Ben	
	4	on Saturday	. bye.		A SUR	VI.	

- b **Op.148 Vocabulary Bank** Days and numbers Do Parts 1 and 2.
- c **1.14** Listen and say the next day or number.
 -) Monday Tuesday (Wednesday
- d Ask three students What's your phone number?

5 LISTENING & SPEAKING

a **1.15** Listen. Where are they? Write 1–6 in the boxes.

	airport	Gate number	
1	sandwich shop	dollars and ce	ent
	hotel	Room	
	museum	Closed on	
	taxi	Manchester Road	ł
	language	Classes on	
	school	and mornings	

- b Listen again. Write a number or a day in each blank.
- c **1.16** Listen and respond.
 - 1) Hello. Nice to meet you. (Nice to meet you, too.
 - 2)) What day is it today? (It's...

One world

Where are you from?

I'm from Vancouver in Canada.

G verb be = and ② V countries, numbers 21–100 P /a/, consonant sounds /tʃ/, /ʃ/, /dʒ/, word stress

1 VOCABULARY countries

- 1.17 Listen and match the music to the countries.
 - Brazil China
 - Mexico Russia



b Vp.149 Vocabulary Bank Countries

c In groups, do The World Quiz. Answer with a continent, country, or nationality from Vocabulary **Bank** Countries.

I think it's Asia.) (I think it's Europe, but I'm not sure.

2 PRONUNCIATION /ə/, /tʃ/, /ʃ/, /dʒ/

D The /ə/ sound

The /a/ sound is the most common vowel sound in English. The /a/ sound has many different spellings, e.g., pasta, Morocco, Argentina.

1.20 Listen to the words and sounds. Then listen and repeat.

11
T
11

computer

American Brazilian Canada China

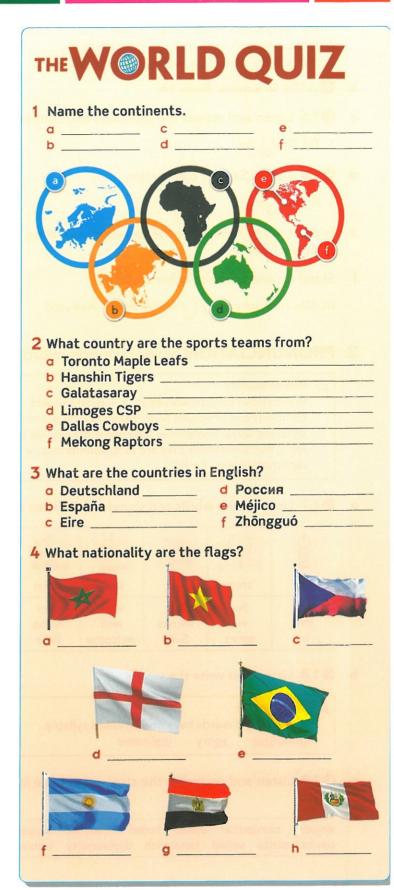
Consonant sounds

Many consonants (e.g., j) and combinations of consonants (e.g., sh) only have one pronunciation (e.g., Japan / jazz, she / English). Some consonants can be pronounced in different ways (e.g., g can be /g/ England or /dʒ/ German).

1.21 Listen to the words, sounds, and sentences. Then listen and repeat. Practice with a partner.

	chess	Charles isn't Czech, he's French.
J.	shower	Is she Turkish or Russian?
43.	jazz	We're German and they're Japanese.

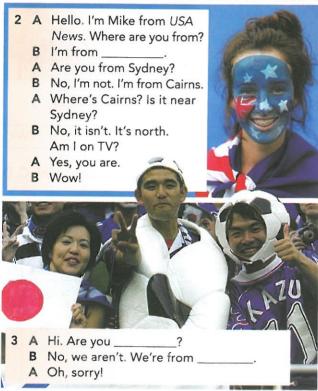
- c **1.22** Listen. Say the nationality.
 - 1)) Canada (Canadian



3 GRAMMAR verb be - and ?

a <a>1.23 Read and listen to three interviews at the Olympics. Fill in the blanks with a country or a nationality.





b Read the interviews again and complete the chart.

+	l'm	you're	it's
		you aren't	
?			

- d 1.25 Listen and respond with a short answer.
 1) Is Sydney the capital of Australia? (No, it isn't.
- e With a partner, write three questions beginning *Is...*? or *Are...*? Ask them to another pair.

Are you from China?) (No, we aren't.

4 SPEAKING

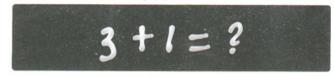
a GCommunication Where are they from? A p.102 B p.108 Ask and answer about people from different countries.

Where's Masako from? She's from Japan.
Where in Japan?

b Imagine you're from a different country. Choose from Vocabulary Bank Countries p.149 and think of a city. Ask other students Where are you from?

5 VOCABULARY numbers 21–100

a 01.26 Answer the questions with numbers 1–20.



- 1)) What's 3 + 1? (4.
- c 1.28 Listen and write the numbers.
- d Write ten numbers from 21–100. Dictate them to a partner.

6 PRONUNCIATION & LISTENING word stress

a 1.29 Listen and repeat the pairs of numbers. How is the stress different?

1 a **13** b **30**

2 a 14 b 40

3 a 15 b 50

4 a 16 b 60

5 a 17 b 70

6 a 18 b 80

7 a 19 b 90

- b 1.30 Listen to the conversations. Which number do you hear? Circle a or b above.
- c Play Bingo.

What's your email?

V-A-Z-Q-U-E-Z How do you spell your last name?

G possessive adjectives: my, your, etc. V classroom language P /ou/, /u/, /ur/, the alphabet, sentence stress

1 VOCABULARY

classroom language

- a Match the words and pictures.
 - a board /bord/
 - a chair /tfer/
 - a computer /kəm'pyutər/
 - a desk /desk/
 - 1 a door /dor/
 - a picture /'piktfər/
 - a table /'teibl/
 - | a wall /wol/
 - a window /'windou/
- 1.31 Listen and check.



With a partner, ask about things in your classroom.



- d Match sentences 1–3 to A–C in the picture.
 - 1 What page is it?
 - 2 Sorry I'm late.
 - 3 Look at the board, please.
- 1.32 Listen and check.
- p.150 Vocabulary Bank Classroom language
- 1.35 Listen and follow the instructions.

2 PRONUNCIATION

/ou/, /u/, /ar/, the alphabet

1.36 Listen to the words and sounds. Then listen and repeat.

phone	close go Mexico
boot boot	school do two
car	partner are Argentina

1.37 Listen and repeat the alphabet.

ABC DEF GHI JKL MNO PQR STU VWX YZ

1.38 Complete the alphabet chart with C, D, K, N, O, S, U, and V. Listen and check.

°°C	9	3	ð		J.	<u>@</u>
train	tree	egg	bike	phone	boot	car
Α	В	F	1		Q	R
Н	_	L	Y		_	
J		M			W	
	Ε					
	G					
	Р	X				
	Т					
	Z					

d 01.39 Listen to the groups of letters.

5 VPB 3 K Q 7 VW 1 EAL 2 GJ 4 CS 6 M N 8 YU

- 1.40 Listen and circle the letter you hear.
- Practice saying the phrases below. Use abbreviations.

the United Kingdom the European Union World Wide Web

a Personal Computer a Very Important Person the United States of America

> a Portable Document Format the National Basketball Association

(aPC

LISTENING & SPEAKING

1.41 Micaela is an ESL student. Listen to her



- b **1.42** Listen. Complete Mark's questions to Micaela.
 - 1 What's your first name? 2 _____ your last name? 3 _____ do you spell it? 4 _____ old are you?
 - 5 Where are you _____ 6 _____ your address?
 - 7 _____ your zip code?
 - 8 What's your _____ address?
 - 9 What's your phone _____?

Sentence stress

In sentences we stress the important words.

What's your first name? It's Mark.

- Listen again and repeat the questions. Copy the rhythm.
- Ask your partner the questions. Write their answers.



GRAMMAR possessive adjectives

Complete the questions with I, you, my, or your.

Where are	1 from?
2	'm from Buenos Aires
What's 3	name?
4	name's Micaela.

Gp.124 Grammar Bank 1C

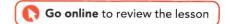
- c 1.44 Listen. Change the sentences.
 - 1)) I'm Matt. (My name's Matt.
 - 2)) You're Sally. (Your name's Sally.
- d 1.45 Look at the photos. Are they their real names? Listen and check.



© Communication What's his / her real name? A p.102 B p.108 Complete information about some actors and singers.

5 WRITING

p.113 Writing Completing a form Complete an application for a visa and write a paragraph about you.



Practical English Arriving in London

checking in

V in a hotel

1 VOCABULARY in a hotel

a Match the words and symbols.



re<u>cep</u>tion /rr'sepfn/ the elevator /ɛləˌveɪtər/ a <u>sing</u>le room /'sɪngl rum/ a double room /'dabl rum/ the first (second, third, etc.) floor /fərst flor/

- b @1.46 Listen and check.
- c Cover the words and look at the symbols. Say the words.

2 DINTRODUCTION



- a **1.47** Watch or listen to Jenny and Rob. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).
 - 1 Rob lives and works in London.
 - 2 He's a writer for a magazine.
 - 3 The name of his magazine is London 20seven.
 - 4 Jenny is British.
 - 5 She's an assistant editor.
 - 6 It's her second time in the UK.
- **b** Watch or listen again. Say why the **F** sentences are false.

3 🔘 CHECKING IN



- a 1.48 Watch or listen to Jenny checking into a hotel. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Complete Jenny's last name: ZI_LI_SK_.
 - 2 What's her room number? _____
- **b** Watch or listen again. Complete the **You hear** phrases.

You hear	You say
Good evening, madam.	Hello. I have a reservation. My name's Jennifer Zielinski.
Can you ¹ that, please?	Z-I-E-L-I-N-S-K-I.
For five nights?	Yes, that's right.
Can I have your passport, please?	Just a second Here you are.
Thank you. Can you sign here, 2 ? Thank you. Here's your 3 . It's room 306, on the third floor. The 4 is over there.	The lift? Oh, the elevator.
Yes. Enjoy your stay, Ms. Zielinski.	Thank you.

American and British English

elevator = American English lift = British English z = /zi | American English | /zed | British English

Greetings

Good \underline{mor} ning = > 12:00

Good after $\underline{noon} = 12:00 > 6:00$

Good evening = 6:00 >

Good night = Goodbye (when you go to bed)
madam = a polite way to greet a woman
sir = a polite way to greet a man

- d Practice the conversation with a partner.
- e Work in pairs. Read your role and look at the conversation in 3b. What do you need to change?
 - **A** (book open) You are the receptionist. It's 11:00 a.m.
 - **B**'s room is 207 on the second floor. Begin *Good morning*, *sir / madam*.
 - **B** (book closed) You arrive at the hotel. Use your first name and last name.
- f Role-play the conversation. Then change roles.

~		
2	Can you?	Can I have?
	= Please do it.	= Please give me
		(my passport, etc.).
	Can you spell that?	Can I have my key, please?
	Can you sign here?	Can I have your passport,
		please?

- h You are in a hotel. Ask the receptionist to give you...
 - your key
 your passport
 - a map of London a pen

4 D JENNY TALKS TO ROB



- a 01.51 Watch or listen. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
 - 1 Jenny has a coffee.
 - 2 She is in London on business.
 - 3 The waitress is German.
 - 4 Jenny calls Rob Walker.
 - 5 Jenny is tired.
 - 6 Their meeting is at 10:00.
- b Watch or listen again. Say why the **F** sentences are false.

- c 1.52 Read the information box. Listen and repeat the phrases and responses.
 - Would you like...?

Would you like a coffee? Yes, please. Would you like another tea? No, thanks.

We use Would you like...? to offer somebody something. We respond Yes, please. or No, thanks.

- d With a partner, practice offering and responding with the drinks below.
 - chai latte coffee soda hot chocolate
 - mineral water tea
- e Look at the **Social English** phrases. Who says them: **J**enny, **R**ob, or the **w**aitress?

Social English

- 1 I'm here on business.
- 2 I'm from New York. What about you?
- 3 No problem.
- 4 This is Rob. Rob Walker.
- 5 That's perfect.
- 6 It's time for bed.



- f @1.53 Watch or listen and check. Then watch or listen and repeat the phrases.
- g Complete conversations A–F with **Social English** phrases 1–6. Practice with a partner.

Α	Hi. Is that Jennifer? 4	Hello, Rob.
В	Oh look! It's 11:30!	Goodnight.
С	Hi. Are you here on vacation?	No,
D		I'm from London.
E	Can I have a coffee, please?	Sure.
F	Here's your coffee. Milk and sugar are on the table.	Thanks.

CAN YOU...?

- check into a hotel and spell your name
- ask somebody to do something / to give you something
- offer somebody a drink, and accept or refuse

Go online to watch the video, review the lesson, and check your progress



Are you neat or messy?

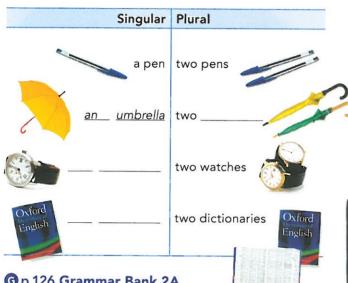






1 VOCABULARY things

- a Look at the photos of the two rooms. Are you neat or messy?
- b With a partner, can you name 1–10 in the two photos?
- c Op.151 Vocabulary Bank Things
- 2 GRAMMAR singular and plural nouns
- a Complete the chart. Why is it a pen but an umbrella?



b **@** p.126 **Grammar Bank 2A**

3 PRONUNCIATION final -s and -es

a **10.2.3** Listen to the words and sounds. Then listen and repeat.

S	snake	books lamps tickets
	zebra	keys pens photos
/1Z/		glasses change purses watches



Final -s or -es after nouns ending in ce, ch, ge, se, sh, ss, and $x = \frac{1}{2}$, e.g., glasses, change purses, watches.

- b ①2.4 Read the rule. Circle the words where -es is pronounced /1z/. Listen and check.
 - 1 classes
- 4 boxes
- 7 pages

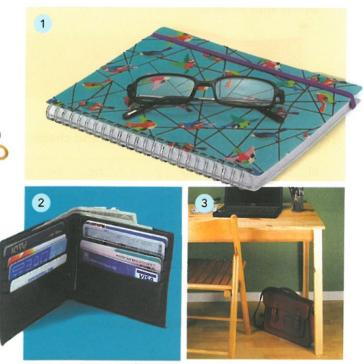
- 2 files
- 5 pieces
- 8 phones

- 3 headphones
- 6 tissues
- c Look at the photos of the two rooms again. What plural things can you see?

4 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING

in, on, under

- a Look at the photos. Complete the sentences with in, on, or under.
 - 1 The glasses are _____ the notebook.
 - 2 The credit cards are the wallet.
 - 3 The bag is _____ the desk.



B p.108 Where are the things?

5 LISTENING

in her bag	9 E	
on his desk	a computer,	
in her study		£

- **b** Listen again. Write what things the people have in each place.
- c Talk to a partner about your bag, desk, or room. Say what things you have. Is your desk or room neat or messy?

(In my bag, I have a change purse, keys, my phone...



2B Made in America

Are taxis cheap in New York? No, they're really expensive.

G adjectives V colors, adjectives, modifiers: very / really P long and short vowel sounds

1 VOCABULARY colors, adjectives

What color is the American flag? Complete the words with vowels.



2.6 Complete the colors. Listen and check.

bl_ck	yIIw	gr_y	_r_ng_	br_wn
p_nk	grn	p_rpl_	s_lv_r	g_ld

With a partner, practice colors with things in the classroom or in your bag.

What color is my wallet?) (It's red. What color is that?) (It's black.

d **V**p.152 Vocabulary Bank Adjectives

2 GRAMMAR adjectives

Look at the American icons. What are they? Label the photos using an adjective and a noun from each circle.

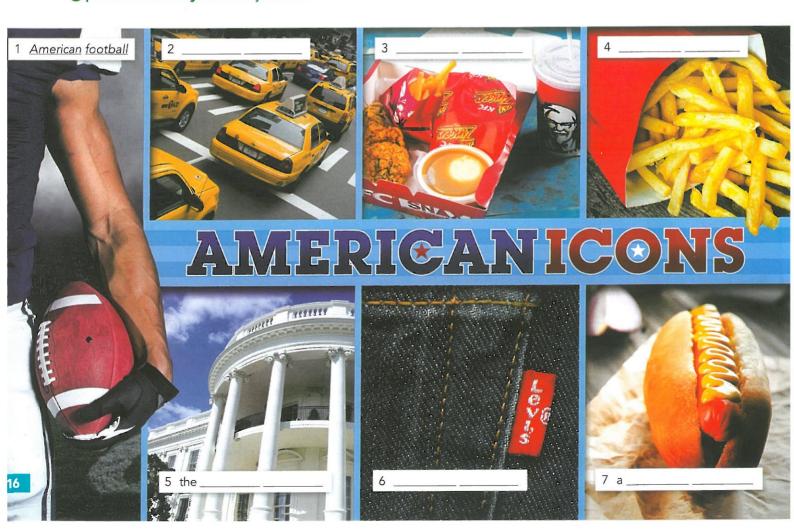
Adjectives

American New French yellow blue hot fast White

Nouns

House jeans football food fries York taxis dog

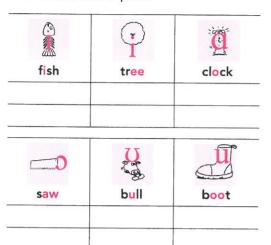
- b Circle the correct word or phrase.
 - 1 Can I have a hot dog / dog hot, please?
 - 2 In New York, the taxis are yellows / yellow.
- Close your books. Can you remember the eight American icons?



3 PRONUNCIATION

long and short vowel sounds

2.9 Listen to the words and sounds. Then listen and repeat.



- b **10** 2.10 Listen and write two adjectives for each sound in the chart.
- c In pairs, make phrases with an adjective and a noun with the same vowel sound. Use a / an with singular nouns.

Adjectives big black cheap good gray long new old short

Nouns bag book boots city day jeans photo song story

a big city

2.11 Listen and check. Practice saving the phrases.



SPEAKING

Tell a partner about eight things you have. Use an adjective or a color.

(I have a new phone. I have a red car...

© Communication The same or different? A p.103 B p.109 Describe your pictures to a partner. Find the differences.

5 READING

American and British English - the same, but different

American and British people speak the same language, English, but with some small differences.

- 1 Vocabulary Some words are different in British English, for example, they say postcode, not zip code; holiday, not vacation; and mobile phone, not cell phone. Some words have different meanings, for example, in American English, a purse is a woman's bag. In British English, a purse is a thing where women have their money and credit cards.
- 2 Color, favor, and other words that end in -or in American English end in -our in British English. Center, theater, and other words that end in -ter in American English end in -tre in British English.
- There are some small differences, especially prepositions. For example, British people say See you on Friday, but Americans say See you Friday.
- This is the really important difference between British and American English. American accents and British accents are very different. When a British person starts speaking, Americans know he or she is British, and vice versa.
- Read the article once. Complete it with the headings. Grammar Pronunciation Spelling Vocabulary
- 12.12 Listen and read the article again. Check your answers to a.
- Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
 - 1 American English and British English are very different.
 - 2 Holiday and postcode are the same in British and American English.
 - 3 Purse has a different meaning in American and British English.
 - 4 Kilometer is the British spelling.
 - 5 British and American grammar are not very different.
 - 6 It's difficult to know if a person is British or American from
- d Do you know any more words that are British English, not American English?





Close the I'm cold. window!

G imperatives, let's V feelings P linking

1 VOCABULARY feelings

Match the words and pictures.



b **2.13** Listen and check. Repeat the phrases.

Collocation

Use be + hungry, thirsty, hot, etc., e.g., I'm hungry. NOT I have hungry.

How do you feel? Make true sentences and tell your partner.

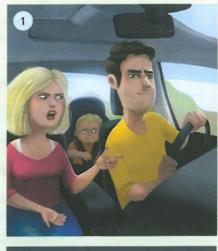
(I'm hungry. I'm very tired.

2 LISTENING & READING

2.14 Lisa and John are on vacation with their baby, Henry. Listen and look at the pictures. How does each person feel?

Picture 1 Lisa angry Picture 3 Lisa, John Picture 2 John, Henry Picture 4 Lisa, Henry

- b Listen again and read the story. Check your answers to a.
- 2.15 Listen to the end of the story. Is it a happy ending?









3 GRAMMAR imperatives, let's

Look at the highlighted phrases in the story. Then complete the chart.

Imperatives			
+ Turn	right for a hotel.	careful!	
	_turn left! _worry.	drive fast!	
Suggestions			
+ - Let's	stop for some food		go there.

b Gp.126 Grammar Bank 2C

GPS In 100 feet turn right. Turn right Lisa Don't turn left! Turn right! John It's left, I'm sure. Lisa No, it isn't. John Yes, it is! Lisa No, it isn't! This is wrong! John Oh no... 2 John I'm thirsty. Where's the water? Lisa Sorry, it's empty. John Empty? Lisa Yes, empty. Let's stop for some food. Henry's hungry. John OK. 3 John What's the matter? I'm cold. Can you close your window? Lisa John Cold? It's hot! I'm cold. And Henry's cold. Lisa John OK. Lisa Please don't drive fast! This road's really dangerous. John Don't worry. I'm a good driver. Be careful! Lisa Lisa Let's look for a hotel. John No, let's not stop now. Lisa But I'm tired and it's dark. And Henry's tired, too. OK, OK. Look for a hotel near here. John Lisa The Highland Hotel's 20 miles from here. Let's go there. John 20 miles? No problem.

What do signs 1–9 mean? Make ± or = imperatives with the verb phrases.

be careful cross the road now eat or drink here go in here listen to music here smoke here take photos turn left turn off your phone

- 1 Turn left.
- 2 Don't smoke here.



Cover the verb phrases and look at the signs. Can you remember the phrases?

SPEAKING



Communication What's the matter? A p.103 B p.109 Role-play conversations.

What's the matter?) (I'm sad.

5 PRONUNCIATION linking

Connected speech

When people speak, they don't separate all the words. Often, if a word ends with a consonant and the next word begins with a vowel, they link them together, e.g., Good, idea.

- 2.17 Listen and write six sentences.
- Practice saying the sentences.

VIDEO LISTENING

Watch the video Have a safe trip! Complete the ten tips. 1 Plan __ your trip. 2 Check your __ 3 Listen to_ information on the radio. 4 Take a_ with you in the car. 5 Take bottles of 6 Take books, games, and _ that all the passengers in the

- car have their seat belts on.
- 8 Check that you have _
- 9 After driving for two hours, stop for _____ minutes.
- 10 Don't use your _
- Watch again. With a partner, agree your top three tips.



digi ZABAN Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle	a, b, or c.
	Hello your name?
	a What b What are c What's
2	Maria is German a student.
	a She's b He's c It's
3	A Where from? B He's from Turkey.
	a he is b is c is he
4	They American, they're Canadian.
	a isn't b aren't c not are
5	A Are you from Paris? B Yes,
	alam bl'm clare
6	She's Brazilian name's Daniela.
	a His b Her c Your
7	We're from the US last name is Martin.
	a Your b Their c Our
8	A What are they? B They're
	a watches b a watch c watchs
9	A What is it? B It's
	a a umbrella b an umbrella c umbrella
10	It's an
	a animal ugly b ugly animal c beautiful animal
11	I have a
	a bag very big b very bag big c very big bag
12	They're very
	a difficult exercises b exercises difficult
	c difficults exercises
13	careful! That dog's dangerous.
	a Have b Be you c Be
14	Please in the library.
	a not eat b don't eat c no eat
15	I'm hungry stop for some food.

VOCABULARY

a Complete with at, from, in, off, or to.

a Let's b Let c Don't

1	I'm	Japan.	
2	Nice	meet you.	
3	What's bonjour		English?
4	Look	the board	•
5	Please turn	you	r phone.

b Complete the phrases with these verbs.

Answer	Open	Read	Stand	Work	
1	th	e text.	4		_ the door.
2	in	pairs.	5		_ the
3	up	,).		questions	

c (Circle) the word that is different.

one (book) six three

- 1 eight file seven two
- 2 Brazil Chinese Vietnam Mexico
- 3 France Peruvian Japanese Turkish
- 4 Africa Asia Europe Ireland
- 5 sixteen forty eighty ninety
- 6 Friday Germany Monday Wednesday
- 7 glasses headphones change purse scissors
- 8 door school window wall
- 9 book magazine newspaper wallet
- 10 angry happy stressed tired
- d Write the opposite adjective.

1	good	
2	expensive	*****
3	dirty	
4	high	
5	left	

PRONUNCIATION

a Practice the words and sounds.

Vowel sounds





- b Pp.166-7 Sound Bank Say more words for each sound.
- c What sound do the pink letters have in these words?

1 email 2 fast 3 page 4 sit 5 tissues

d <u>Un</u>derline the stressed syllable.

1 ad dress 3 expensive 5 thir teen

2 Germany 4 sun glasses



CAN YOU understand this text?

- Read the article once. What kind of people is
- Read the article again. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
 - 1 Rockefeller Center is very expensive.
 - 2 It's a good place to take photos.
 - 3 A lot of people stand and wait to get tickets for the Statue of Liberty.
 - 4 It's a good idea to drive in New York City.
 - 5 It's easy to walk to Coney Island from New York.
 - 6 Good Enough to Eat is open from morning to night.

CAN YOU understand these people?

2.18 Watch or listen and answer the questions.









- 1 Her name is _ a Malini b Mallini c Malinni 2 Olga is from **b** Monaco a Mexico c Moscow 3 Her name is b Lisa a Lydia c Lena She's ____. a Canadian b American c English
- 4 Jake is ____.
 - a very untidy
- b tidy
- c very tidy

CAN YOU say this in English?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check () the box if you can do these things.

Can you...?

- 1 count from 0-20
- 2 count from 20-100 (20, 30, etc.)
- 3 say the days of the week
- 4 give three instructions, two ± and one =
- 5 introduce yourself and another person
- 6 answer the questions below
 - What's your first name / last name?
 - How do you spell it?
 - · Where are you from?



Buy your tickets for the Statue of Liberty online

The Statue of Liberty is an American icon, but there are always long lines for tickets. Buy them on the internet before you go.

Explore the city on foot

Don't rent a car in New York City. The best thing is to walk - but good shoes are very important! Slow down and listen to the city. Sit on the grass in Central Park on a sunny day. But if you are tired, take a bus or the subway!



Visit Coney Island

Go to Coney Island by subway (an hour) and have a delicious New York hot dog. If it's hot, go for a swim in the Atlantic!



Have a meal at Good Enough to Eat

Good Enough to Eat on 83rd Street is a great traditional American restaurant serving breakfast, lunch, and dinner. It has salads, sandwiches, steak, and more.

America: the good and the bad

Yes, but it doesn't rain every day.

G simple present + and - V verb phrases: cook dinner, etc. P third person -s

1	VOCA	BU	LARY	verb	phrases
---	------	----	------	------	---------

- 3.1 Listen and match the sounds and verb phrases.
 - drink water play the guitar
- like animals speak German

watch TV

- V p.153 Vocabulary Bank Verb phrases
- 3.3 Listen. Say the phrases.
 - 1)) TV (watch TV

GRAMMAR simple present ⊕ and ⊡

Read the article below. Complete the things Chela likes (1-8) with a word or phrase from the list.

coffee fast food freeways multiculturalism sports the freedom the language the weather

- 3.4 Listen and check.
- Answer the questions with a partner.
 - 1 Look at the highlighted phrases. How are the verbs different in phrases 7 and 8? Why?
 - 2 Find the negative \Box forms in the article and complete the chart. How are they different? Why?

+	
I have	
It rains	

3 PRONUNCIATION third person -s

Final -s or -es

The pronunciation rules for verbs ending in -s and -es are the same as for plural nouns.

How do you pronounce these plural nouns?

books keys watches

- b 03.6 Listen to the sounds and sentences. Then listen and repeat.
 - /s/ She speaks Arabic. He drinks a lot of coffee. She cooks every day.
 - /z/ It rains a lot. He has a cat. She does yoga. He goes out on Friday night.
 - /IZ/ He watches American shows. The movie finishes in a minute. The bookstore closes at ten.
- c 03.7 Listen. Change the sentences.
 - 1)) I live in an apartment. She.

(She lives in an apartment.

My name's Chela. I'm an engineer. I like...



d Gp.128 Grammar Bank 3A

WHAT AMERICANS LIKE ABOUT THE US



1	<u>multiculturalism</u> . People from all over the world
	live in the US, and they live together happily. Usually.

2	English is international. I speak English. You speak
	English. I don't have communication problems.

. I have a large cup of coffee every day. When I'm in a hurry, I go to the drive-thru and buy it from my car.

_. I wear what I want. I say what I want. I do what I want. 4

. I like all kinds of sports, but I really like basketball. My favorite basketball team is the Golden State Warriors. I watch their games on TV.

. We drive a lot! The freeways are very fast and have a lot of 6 car lanes. It's really easy to drive from one place to another.

7 . I love the fall weather. A good fall day is cool, but not too cold. Sometimes it rains in the fall, but it doesn't rain every day.

. My boyfriend cooks really good hamburgers, and the US is great for fast food!

d Work in pairs. Tell your partner six true things about you, three + and three -. Choose verb phrases from **Vocabulary Bank** Verb phrases p.153.

(I play tennis. I don't wear glasses...

e Change partners. Tell your new partner the six things about your old partner.

(Eva plays tennis. She doesn't wear glasses...

4 READING

- a Read the article on the right. Write ✓ if the person is positive about the country he or she lives in, ✗ if he or she is negative, and ✓✗ if he or she is positive and negative. Give reasons for your answers.
- b Read the article again. Complete the sentences with a name.

1	likes the w	eather.
2	and	don't like the weather.
3	likes the fo	ood.
4	doesn't lik	e the food.
5	and	think the people are friendly
6		food costs a lot.
7	thinks Ame	ericans work very hard.

c Look at two words from the article. Match them to their meanings. What do you think everywhere means?

everybody /ˈɛvribadi/ everything /ˈɛvriˌ0m/			
all things	2	all people	

5 SPEAKING

a Complete the sentences under each heading in your own words. Think about why you like (or don't like) them.

Things I like about my country

My favorite thing about _____ is... I really love...
I also like...

Things I don't like about my country

One thing that I don't like is... I also don't like...

b Compare your sentences with a partner and say why. Do you like the same things?

My favorite thing about Italy is the food, because I love pasta and real Italian pasta is fantastic.

Useful words: Why? and because
Use because to answer the question Why?
I don't like the weather because it rains a lot.

WHAT AMERICANS WHO LIVE ABROAD THINK ABOUT OTHER COUNTRIES



Sarah, 36, is from New York. She lives in the UK. In the US, we work really hard. Sometimes we don't take vacations because we work so hard. British people are different. They only want to finish work and go home.

Amy, 22, is from Tennessee. She lives in Thailand. I really like the weather. It's very hot and it rains a lot from June to October. Also, the people are very friendly. Everybody smiles. I love it!

Jayne, 22, is from Connecticut. She lives in Argentina. Argentina is a beautiful country, and the people are very warm and friendly. They like to talk to foreigners and they are interested in other countries. Something I don't like is the weather in winter. Sometimes it's very cold.

Gaby, 30, is from Minnesota. She lives in Mexico.

My favorite thing in Mexico is the tacos al pastor. We don't have tacos al pastor in the US. Some people think Mexican food is spicy, but I love it. Everything about Mexico is great except the traffic in Mexico City. It's very slow.

Eric, 28, is from New York. He lives in Iceland. Iceland can be very cold and gray. And it rains a lot! For me, food is a problem. They eat a lot of fish and seafood here, and I don't like fish or seafood.

Christina, 21, is from California. She lives in Morocco. I love Morocco. Why? Because I like the culture, the art, the history. It's a beautiful country, too, especially the Atlas Mountains. The only thing I don't like? It's difficult for a woman to travel alone.



Do you work at night?

Yes, I'm a taxi driver.

G simple present ? V jobs P /ər/



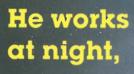
1 GRAMMAR simple present ?

- Look at the photo of Jess and her husband Carl. What's his job? Find the answer in the interview with Jess.
- b Read the interview. Complete 1–5 with questions from the list.

Do you have time together? Does he have free weekends? What do you do, Jess? What does your husband do? Do you work long hours?



- d Cover the interview and look at the questions in b. How does Jess answer them?
- e Do you work or study at night? What problems do you have?
- f Look at the questions in b again. Which are...?
 - 1 about Jess
 - 2 about her husband
 - 3 about Jess and her husband
- G p.128 Grammar Bank 3B



but she works during the day...





What do you do, Jess?

I work in an office. I'm an administrator.

No, I don't. I work normal hours, from 9:00 to 5:00, Monday to Friday.

He's a police officer. He works at night, from 8:00 p.m. to 6:00 in the

morning.

No, he doesn't. Well, he has two free days, but they're Wednesday and Thursday. He works Saturday and Sunday - they're busy nights for police officers.

Not really, except when we're on vacation. I'm in bed when he comes home; he's in bed when I leave home in the morning. We don't eat together. That's awful. Sometimes I don't cook, I just have cookies for dinner.

Can you think of any good things about your different hours?

Yes, we earn more money because Carl does a lot of overtime.

Do you have any suggestions for couples like you?

Have a whiteboard in your hall or your kitchen and write down all the housework. Then check off things when you do them. That way, the dogs don't eat twice!

Glossary overtime extra hours

2 VOCABULARY jobs

a Complete the sentences with a job from the list.

actor administrator police officer receptionist teacher

1 A ______ works on the street, or in a police station.
2 An ______ works in a theater.
3 A _____ works in a school.
4 A _____ works in a hotel.
5 An _____ works in an office.

b Op.154 Vocabulary Bank Jobs

c What do you do? What do your parents do? Ask three other students in the class.

3 PRONUNCIATION /ər/

a ①3.12 Listen to the words and sounds. Then listen and repeat.



/or/
ur, ir, and er usually = /or/ when they are stressed.

b ①3.13 Listen to the sentences. Then practice saying them.

Doctors and lawyers earn a lot.
Journalists work all over the world.
She's a teacher. Her name's Ursula.
He's a taxi driver. He works thirty hours a week.
I'm a waiter in a burger restaurant.
I study German at the university.



4 LISTENING

- a ①3.14 Listen to Part 1 of a game show called *His Job*, *Her Job*. Three people ask Alex and Sue about their jobs. <u>Underline</u> the questions they ask Alex.
- b Listen again. What are Alex's answers? Write ✓ (yes), X (no), or D (it depends).

Where?	Alex	Sue
/ work outside?		
/ work inside?		
/ work in an office?	X	
/ work at home?		
When?		
/ work in the evening?		
/ work at night?		
/ work on the weekend?		
How?	mo Linispa i	eneill
/ work with the public?		
/ work on a team?		
/ work long hours?		
Other		
/ have special qualifications?		
/ get vacation time?		
/ speak foreign languages?		
/ travel?		
/ drive?		
/ make things?		
/ wear a uniform or special clothes?		
/ earn a lot of money?		
/ like your job?		

- c @3.15 Now listen to Part 2 and do the same for Sue.
- **d** Look at their answers and make sentences about them. What do you think their jobs are?

(Alex doesn't work in an office. (He sometimes works in the evening.

e 🐧 3.16 Listen. What do Alex and Sue do?

5 SPEAKING

a In groups of four, play *His Job*, *Her Job*. Choose jobs from **Vocabulary Bank** Jobs **p.154**. Ask questions to guess them.

(Do you work at night?

b Now think of a person you know who has one of the jobs. Is it a man or a woman? Play the game again.

(Does she speak foreign languages?





Love me, love my dog

What kind of music do you like?

1 like classical music.

G word order in questions V question words P sentence stress

LISTENING

3.17 A man and a woman meet in the park. Listen. Match the names to the people or dogs. What do you find out about the dogs?

his dog Becca the man Barry Dave her dog Dolly the woman

- 3.18 Listen to their conversation at the café. What happens at the end?
- Listen again. Complete the questions.

D	It's really hot. Would you ¹ <u>like</u> a drink?	
	Or some ice cream?	
В	Yes, why not? Let's go to the café.	
D	² kind of ice cream do you	_?
	Uh, an ice-cream bar if they have it.	
	Here you are. One ice-cream bar.	
	Thanks, Dave.	
	3?	
	I live near here, on Park Road. And you?	
D	I live across town on Lake Street. 4	
	do you, Becca?	
В	I'm a journalist.	
D	Really? How interesting! Do you 5	
	for a newspaper?	
B	No, for TV. 6 about you?	
D	I'm a teacher. I'm on vacation now.	
B	Me too. Oh! My ice cream.	
D	Dolly! Bad dog! I'm really sorry.	
	That's OK.	
D	Do you ⁷ another ice-cream bar?	
В	No, thanks.	
D	Are you sure? I'm really sorry. Look, let's have	
	lunch one day. I know a great place that's dog	
	friendly. Are you free on Saturday?	
В	Oh, well, OK. Yes. Thanks.	

3.19 Read the information box. Listen and repeat the phrases for showing interest. Copy the intonation.

Showing interest

When you have a conversation, show interest in what the other person says. Use Really? How interesting! What about you? Me too., etc.

Practice the conversation in **c** with a partner.



- 3.20 Becca meets Dave at a dog-friendly restaurant. Listen and complete the sentences with **B** (Becca), **D** (Dave), or **R** (the restaurant).
 - thinks the restaurant is cute.
 - 2 ___ has good food for people and dogs.
 - 3 ____ doesn't really like dogs.
 - 4 ____ doesn't have a big apartment.
 - 5 ____ has two cats.
 - 6 serves homemade ice cream.
- Do you think the lunch is a success?



2 GRAMMAR word order in questions

- a Put the words in order to make the questions.
 - 1 Barry is old how
 - 2 his name what's
 - 3 like do it you
 - 4 about feel do cats you how
- b @3.21 Listen and check.
- c @p.128 Grammar Bank 3C

3 VOCABULARY question words

a Complete the questions with a question word or phrase.

How many What What kind of When Where Which Who Why

- 1 What phone do you have? I have a Samsung.
- 2 _____ brothers and sisters do you have?
 I have two sisters.
- 3 _____ do you prefer, cats or dogs? Cats, I think.
- 4 _____ do you work?
- In a restaurant near the river.
- 5 _____ do you have language classes? On Mondays and Wednesdays.
- 6 _____ music do you like?
- I like pop and reggae.
- 7 ______'s your favorite actor? Michael B. Jordan.
- 8 _____ do you like him? Because he's a really good actor.
- b 03.24 Listen and check. Then answer the questions.
 - 1 How is Wh-pronounced in Who?
 - 2 How is Wh- pronounced in the other question words?
 - 3 What's the difference between What...? and Which...?

4 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

a ②3.25 Listen to the questions. Then listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.

Where do you work?

What phone do you have?

What kind of music do you like?

Who's your favorite actor?

b Work in pairs. A ask B the questions in 3a. B give your own answers. Then change roles.

5 SPEAKING

a Look at the questions. What words are missing in each group?



- **b** Work in pairs. Interview a partner with the questions in **a**. Then change roles.
 - A Ask B the first question.
 - **B** Answer the question. Give more information if you can.
 - A Show interest. Then ask the next question.
 - A Where do you live?)
 - (B In the downtown area, near the train station.
 - A Really? Me too.)

6 WRITING

wp.113 Writing A personal profile Write a profile of yourself.

Practical English At a coffee shop

buying a coffee V telling the time

VOCABULARY telling the time

Look at the clock. What time is it?



- vp.157 Vocabulary Bank Time Do Part 1.
- **©** Communication What's the time? A p.104 B p.109 Practice times.

ROB AND JENNY MEET



- 3.27 Watch or listen to what happens when Rob and Jenny meet. What do they decide to do?
- Watch or listen again. Answer the questions. Why...?
 - 1 is Rob late
 - 2 doesn't Jenny like the hotel breakfast
 - 3 is Jenny busy after 9:30
 - 4 does Rob say "Don't worry."

BUYING A COFFEE



Look at the coffee shop menu. Do you know what all these things are?

	AMERICANO	regular 3.15	large 3.95
—	LATTE	regular 3.45	large 3.65
—	CAPPUCCINO	regular 3.45	large 3.65
	TEA	regular 2.65	large 3.10
BROV	VNIE	3.00	s negal L
CROI	SSANT	3.00	



- b @3.28 Watch or listen to Rob and Jenny buying coffee. Answer the questions.
 - 1 What kinds of coffee do Jenny and Rob have?
 - 2 What do they have to eat?
 - 3 How much is it?
- Watch or listen again. Complete the You hear phrases.

You hear	You say
Can I ¹ you?	What would you like, Jenny?
	An espresso, please.
² or double?	Double.
	Can I have a latte, please?
3 or large?	Large.
To have ⁴ or take away?	To take away.
Anything else?	No, thanks.
	A brownie for me, pleaseand a croissant.
OK.	How much is that?
That's £12.45, please.	Sorry, how much?
£12.45. Thank you.	
And your 5	Thanks.

- d 3.29 Watch or listen and repeat the **You say** phrases. Copy the <u>rhy</u>thm.
- e In threes, practice the conversation.
- - A (book open) You are the barista.
 - B (book closed) You invite C (book closed) to have a drink.
 - A begins Can I help you?
 - B asks C What would you like?

Glossary barista a person who works in a coffee shop

4 D FIRST DAY IN THE OFFICE



- a @3.30 Watch or listen and answer the questions.
 - 1 What's Karen's job?
 - 2 Where in Europe does Jenny have family?
 - 3 Where does she live in New York?
 - 4 Does Karen have family in New York?
 - 5 What does Daniel offer Jenny to drink?
 - 6 What time is his next meeting?
- b Look at the Social English phrases. Who says them: Rob, Karen, or Daniel?

Social English

- 1 Here we are.
- 2 Is this your first time in the UK?
- 3 Would you like something to drink?
- 4 Talk to you later.
- c @3.31 Watch or listen and check. Then watch or listen and repeat the phrases.
- d Complete conversations A–D with **Social English** phrases 1–4. Practice with a partner.

Sit down.	No, thanks, I'm fine.
Вує	e. Bye.
lice to meet you.	No, it isn't. I know London very well.
	oh, it's very nice.
	Bye

CAN YOU ...?

- tell the time
- order food and drink in a café
- meet and introduce people



Family photos

Who's that?

Look at some photos of actors with family. With a

She's my niece - my brother's daughter.

G possessive 's, Whose...? V family P /A/, the letter o

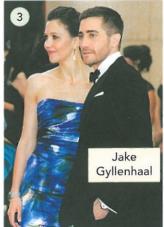
- **GRAMMAR** possessive 's, Whose...?
- Look at the title of the article and the photo of Doug. Who do you think his brother is? Do you think it's good or bad to have a famous person in your family?
- Read the article. Now do you know who Doug's brother is? Does he like having a famous brother?





partner, choose a or b below.







- 1 He's Carey Mulligan's
- 2 She's Meryl Streep's
- 3 She's Jake Gyllenhaal's
- 4 He's Will Smith's
- 5 He's Marv-Kate Olsen's
- a husband.
- a sister.
- a wife.
- a son. a father.
- b daughter. b sister.

b brother.

- b brother.
- b husband.
- d 4.1 Listen and check.
- @p.130 Grammar Bank 4A
- Look at some things from the photos. Whose are they? Ask and answer with a partner.

Whose bow tie is it?) (It's Will Smith's bow tie.

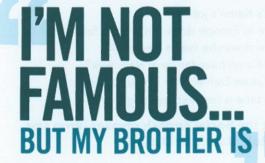








glasses



Doug is a businessman, and a photographer. He is also the founder of Care to Learn, an organization that helps poor children in the US do well in school. He's married with three children, and he and his family have a normal life. But for many people, he is always 's brother."

Doug's life can be difficult. People follow him on the street. They ask him questions about his brother, his brother's ex-wife, who is also very famous, and their six children. The paparazzi follow Doug's children and take photographs.

But it also has advantages. "I go to movie premieres and I meet famous actors. And when I call people and ask for money for Care to Learn, it helps when I say _____'s brother."

Doug is not jealous of his older brother. He is happy with his life. "I see the world of famous people from the outside. I can leave it, but my brother can't."

2 VOCABULARY family

a **V**p.155 **Vocabulary Bank** The family

b In pairs, answer the questions.

Who's...?

1 your mother's mother my grandmother
2 your father's brother my ______
3 your brother's / sister's daughter my ______
4 your aunt's child my ______
5 your husband's / wife's brother my _____
6 your niece's brother my ______

3 PRONUNCIATION /A/, the letter o

a 04.4 Listen to the words and sound. Then listen and repeat.



up

mother brother son husband uncle couple cousin



The same vowel in English can be pronounced in different ways, e.g., o can be /a/ (not), /ou/ (photo), /n/ (mother), and /u/ (two).

b How is the letter o pronounced in these words? Put them in the correct column.

come do doctor don't go home hot job London model money no one stop who

à			u u
clock	phone	up	boot
doctor	don't	come	do

- d Practice the conversations with a partner.
 - 1 A Who's that?
 - B My mother.
 - A She's very young!
 - B No, she's sixty-one. She's a doctor.
 - 2 A Who are they?
 - B My brother and his son.
 - A Do they live in London?
 - B No, they don't.
 - 3 A What's her job?
 - B She's a model. She earns a lot of money.

4 LISTENING & SPEAKING



a 4.6 Listen to Grace showing a friend photos on her phone. Who are Mark, Celia, and Miriam? Complete the first row of the chart.

	Mark	Celia	Miriam
Grace's	boyfriend		
More information			

- **b** Listen again. Write down more information, e.g., ages, jobs, where they live, etc.
- c Work with a partner.
 - A Show B some photos of family or friends on your phone or write their names on a piece of paper.
 - **B** Ask three questions about each person.

Who's that?

(That's Yolanda. She's my sister.

How old is she?





From morning to night

What time do you go to work?

At 8:00.

G prepositions of time (at, in, on) and place (at, in, to) V daily routine P linking

1 VOCABULARY daily routine

- 4.7 Listen to the sounds and number the phrases 1-6.
 - get dressed
 - 1 wake up
 - have breakfast
 - take a shower
 - go to work / school
 - have a coffee / tea
- b What order do you do these things in the morning? Tell your partner.

(First, I wake up, then I...

vp.156 Vocabulary Bank Daily routine

2 PRONUNCIATION linking

Connected speech

Remember, when people speak they usually link words together. Sometimes three linked words sound like one word, e.g., I getupat seven.

4.9 Listen and write five sentences.

(5 words)		
(5 words)		
(6 words)		
(6 words)		
(5 words)	-0000 0000-0000	

4.10 Listen and repeat the sentences. Try to link the words with .

I get up at seven.

I take a shower.

I go to work.

I have a sandwich for lunch.

I get home at six.

I make the dinner.

I go to bed, at ten.

What a life!

READING & LISTENING

Read the article. Use the glossary to help you. How do you think Marjan feels at the end of a typical day? Choose from the adjectives in the list.

bored happy relaxed sad stressed tired

MOTHER

Marjan Jahangiri, originally from Iran, is one of the only women professors of cardiac surgery in Europe. She does more than 300 operations a year. She lives in London with her husband and their 17-year-old son, Darius.

Can you describe your daily routine?



I get up between 6:00 and 6:30 a.m., I get to work at 7:00, and my meetings usually start at 7:30. After that, I don't have a break. I have lunch at my desk. I often do two operations a day, and I also have lectures and more meetings. At home, I have dinner with my son. Between

9:30 and 11:30 p.m., I do research and I watch the news on TV. One or two nights a week I'm on call, so I probably need to do operations during the night. I often work on weekends, too. But that's OK - I think I have a great life because I love my work.

How do you balance work with your family life?

I spend a lot of time with my son. I want him to learn about hard work and good values, and I want to be an example for him. My husband is away a lot, but we talk on the phone every day. I think one reason why I am successful in my professional life is because he isn't at home all the time!

What do you do to relax?

I play the piano for an hour every day, late at night. I think it helps me with my operations – it's technical in the same way. I also go to the hair stylist twice a week. I do a lot of my research there! They turn

the music off for me, and I use the time to read all my academic papers.

Glossary

cardiac surgery an operation to repair somebody's heart

a lecture a talk to a group of people to teach them about something, e.g., at a university be on call be available for work if necessary do research study something to learn more about it

- b Read the article again. In pairs, answer the questions from memory.
 - 1 What time does Marjan get up?
 - 2 What does she do when she's at work?
 - 3 Where does she have lunch?
 - 4 What does she do in the evening?
 - 5 Is her job a 9-5 job? Why (not)?
 - 6 Does she see her family a lot?
 - 7 How does she relax?
 - 8 Does she like her job?



MORNING

7:30 He gets up.

He has breakfast and then he goes to school by Tube.

8:20

²He _____ to school.

9:00

Classes start. ³ He has

classes before lunch.

1:00

He has lunch at 4 His classes start again.

4:15

He finishes school. He doesn't 6

then. He studies in the library or plays music. On Tuesdays, he ⁷_____ in the school

choir and on 8___ percussion in the school orchestra.



EVENING

6:00

He gets home. ¹⁰ He

a _____ and then has dinner. After dinner, he does

homework for 11

or _____ hours.

__ He goes to bed.

Glossary

the Tube the London subway

choir a group of people

who sing together

percussion musical

instruments, e.g., drums A levels exams that UK students take in the final year of school

- 4.11 Listen to Darius, Marjan's 17-year-old son. talking about his day. Complete blanks 1-12.
- d What do Marjan and Darius have in common? Who do you think is more tired in the evening?

GRAMMAR prepositions of time and place

a Look at some sentences from Darius's day. Complete them with at, in, on, or to.

1 | get up ____ 7:30.

- 2 I usually go ____ school by Tube.
- 3 I have lunch ____ school.
- 4 I usually have two or three classes ____ the afternoon.
- 5 I sing in the school choir ____ Tuesdays.
- 4.12 Listen and check.
- G p.130 Grammar Bank 4B
- 4.15 Listen and say the time phrases with the correct preposition.
 - 1)) the weekend (on the weekend

SPEAKING & WRITING

a Look at the questions to ask your partner. What two words are missing?

What time / get up?

/ have breakfast in the morning? What / have?

How / go to work or school?

What time / start work or school?

What time / have lunch? Where?

/ have a long lunch break? How long?

What time / finish work or school?

What / do after work or school?

/ go out during the week? Where / go?

/ relax in the evening? What / do?

When / do English homework?

What time / go to bed?

How / feel at the end of the day?



°10

Work in pairs. Use the questions to interview your partner about a typical weekday. What do you have in common?

(We both get up at 7:00.

favorite day of the week.





Blue Zones

How often do you eat fish?

Hardly ever. Maybe once a month.

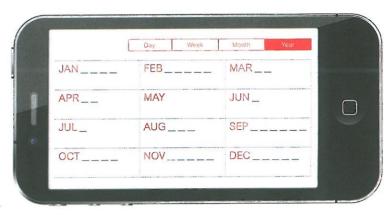
G position of adverbs, expressions of frequency V months, adverbs, and expressions of frequency P the letter h

- VOCABULARY months, adverbs, and expressions of frequency
- **10**4.16 Complete the months in the phone calendar. Listen and check.
- Listen again and repeat the months. Which five are stressed on the second syllable?
- Say the month of your birthday around the class.
- **Op.157 Vocabulary Bank** Time Do Parts 2 and 3.
- 2 GRAMMAR position of adverbs, expressions of frequency
- Read the text about teenagers in the US. Are teenagers in your country similar?

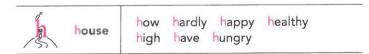


American teenagers may, for the first time in the nation's history, live shorter lives than their parents because of their unhealthy lifestyles. According to recent research:

- 96% spend more than five hours looking at a screen every day.
- 86% hardly ever eat fruit or green vegetables.
- 75% don't usually sleep for eight hours a day the average is seven hours.
- 34% eat fast food at least once a day.
- 33% drink more than four sugary drinks every day.
- 31% are often very stressed.
- 25% never play sports or exercise.



- Look at the position of the highlighted words and expressions. Circle the correct rule.
 - 1 Adverbs of frequency (e.g., usually) go: before / after a main verb. before / after the verb be.
 - 2 Expressions of frequency (e.g., every week) go at the beginning / at the end of a phrase or sentence.
- @p.130 Grammar Bank 4C
- Communication Short Life, Long Life? p.104 Do the questionnaire.
- **PRONUNCIATION** the letter h
- 4.21 Listen to the words and sound. Then listen and repeat.



104.22 Listen. Circle one word where h is not pronounced. Then practice saying the sentences.

Harry's a hair stylist.

He hardly ever has breakfast.

He's often in a hurry.

He usually has half an hour for lunch.

He often has a hamburger for dinner.

Harry isn't very healthy.

c In pairs, make true sentences about you with the verb phrases and an adverb or expression of frequency.

be at home on Saturday night be in a hurry do housework go to the hair stylist have a healthy lunch take a hot bath sleep for eight hours

I'm not usually at home on Saturday night.

4 READING & SPEAKING

- a Look at the photos and read the text. What are the "Blue Zones"? How old do you think Alexis and María are?
- b G Communication A Ikaria p.104 B Nicoya p.110 Read and tell your partner about the place.
- c What words and phrases can you remember from the articles? With a partner, write words in each category.



5 D VIDEO LISTENING

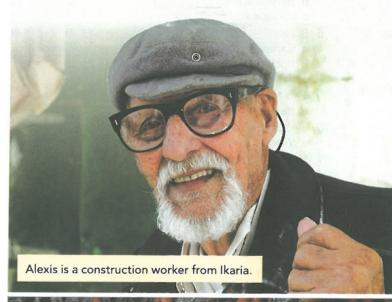


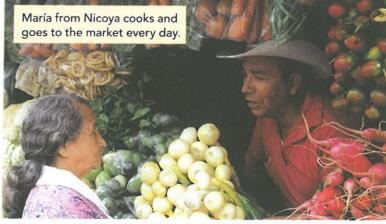
- a Watch the documentary *The island of Okinawa*. Mark the sentences **T** (true) or **F** (false).
 - 1 The island of Okinawa is north of Japan.
 - 2 70-year-old Okinawans have the bodies of 50-year-olds.
 - 3 Hara hachi means stop eating before you're full.
 - 4 The Okinawans don't eat meat or fish.
 - 5 They eat a lot of seaweed.
 - 6 They do yoga every day.
 - 7 The Okinawans are often in a hurry.
 - 8 When Okinawans reach 100, they have a ceremony called *kajimaya*.
- b Watch again and correct the F sentences.
- c What does Okinawa have in common with Ikaria and Nicoya? Are there people in your country who live like this? In what ways is your lifestyle similar to or different from life in the "Blue Zones"? Would you like to live in one of the "Blue Zones"?



What are their secrets?

What do the Greek island of Ikaria, the Nicoya peninsula in Costa Rica, and the island of Okinawa in Japan have in common? The answer is that, together with Loma Linda in California and Sardinia in Italy, they are the five so-called "Blue Zones," the best places in the world to live if you want to have a long and healthy life. Many people there live until they are 100 or more. So what are their secrets?





3&4 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Circle	a, b, or c.					
1	I live near here.					
	a not b don't c doesn't					
2 My sister three children.						
	a has b have c haves					
3	English?					
	a Are they speak					
	b Speak they					
	c Do they speak					
4	your sister work?					
	a Does b Is c Do					
5	A Do you work here? B Yes, I					
	a work b do c am					
6	A What? B He's an engineer. a he does b does he c does he do					
7	What languages?					
	a speak you					
	b do you speak					
•	c you speak					
8	Bill is a Carla's husband					
	b husband's Carla					
	c the Carla's husband					
0						
7	This is my house. a parent's b parents' c parents					
10	book is this?					
10	a Who's b Who c Whose					
11	We usually have lunch two o'clock.					
- 11	a in b on c at					
12	What time do you go bed?					
12	a in b to c at					
13	She late for class.					
13	a never is b is never c isn't never					
14	I early.					
	a usually get up b get usually up					
	c get up usually					
15						
1077	a one a week					
	b one the week					
	c once a week					

VOCABULARY

a	C	Complete with at, in, on, to, or up.							
	1	Saturday night, I go to the movies							
	2	I work a fast-food restaurant.							
	3	What time do you usually wake?							

4 My brother lives ____ an apartment.5 What time do you go ____ work?

b Complete the phrases with these verbs.

C	do	get	go	have	listen	play	reac	see	take	wear
-				dresse	d		6 _		the	guitar
2	2 _			the dog	g for a w	<i>ı</i> alk	7 _		to n	nusic
3	3 _		195371 105 105	lunch			8 _		frie	nds
4	1_			your ho	mewor	k	9		the	newspaper
5	5 _			shoppi	ng		10 _		glas	sses
1 2 3	b 2 a 3 c	rothe unt hef lways	r gr husb clean ear	randfath and m er fac ly oft	t is dif ner nie nother-i tory p en ne ly Mo	ece u n-law pilot ver	ncle	sister		
(Cor	mplet	e wi	th Hov	v many	, Who	, Wh	y, Wha	at, or \	Where.
1	_				do you	live?				
2	2 _				does yo	our fath	er do	?		
3	3 _			i	s your f	avorite	e fami	ly mem	ber?	

PRONUNCIATION

a Practice the words and sounds.

4 _____ hours do you work?

5 _____ do you want to learn English?

Vowel sounds





computer





Consonant sounds









b Pp.166–167 Sound Bank Say more words for each sound.

c What sound do the pink letters have in these words?

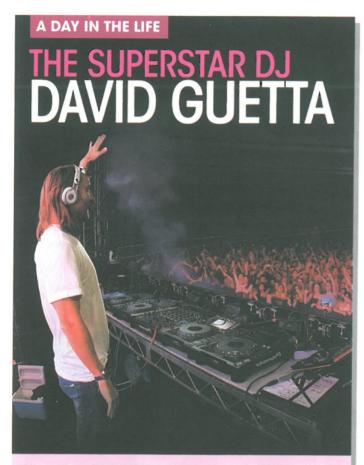
1 brother 2 nephew 3 Czech 4 which 5 work

d Underline the stressed syllable.

1 be cause 3 un em ployed 5 grand moth er 2 den tist 4 re cep tion ist

CAN YOU understand this text?

Read the article once. What is unusual about David Guetta's life?



I wake up at about 1:00 p.m., and the first thing I do is go outside. I live in Ibiza, and I like having breakfast in the sun. I usually have fruit juice, eggs, fruit, and tea. I never drink coffee. After breakfast, I answer my emails for an hour. Then I go to the gym.

I never listen to music in the house, or even in the car, because music is my job. On a typical day, I spend two or three hours in my studio, and then another four hours at a nightclub. My work starts in the evening. I usually have dinner in a restaurant, and then I go to the club. I try to have a normal life, but my job isn't normal. I arrive at a club like a secret agent - I go in through the back door and security takes me to the stage.

I finish work at 4:00 in the morning. Security takes me out, and then I go home. After about four hours playing music, I'm very excited. My manager says, "Go home and sleep," but that's impossible. First I need to calm down. When I get home, I have a cup of tea, brush my teeth, and say, "Thank you for this wonderful life." I am 47 now, but I want to do this when I'm 60 or 80. I want to do this forever.

- b Read the article again. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
 - 1 He gets up in the afternoon.
 - 2 He only eats fruit for breakfast.
 - 3 He exercises every day.
 - 4 He works six to seven hours a day.
 - 5 He eats out in the evening.
 - 6 When he finishes work, he goes home and sleeps.
 - 7 He doesn't want to change his life.

CAN YOU understand these people?

4.23 Watch or listen and answer the guestions.











Talitha

Sophie

- 1 Talitha works
 - a 27 hours a week
 - b in a market
 - c 37 hours a week
- 2 Joelle has
 - a a 13-year-old sister
 - b a 30-year-old sister
 - c three sisters
- 3 Sophie usually gets up at ____ on weekends.
 - a 7:30
 - b 9:00
 - c 9:30
- 4 Jake ____.
 - a goes to the gym and walks
 - b exercises at the school gym
 - c walks to the gym every day
- 5 Tom likes ____ in New York.
 - a the taxis
 - b the people
 - c the food

CAN YOU say this in English?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check () the box if you can do these things.

Can you...?

- 1 say where you live and what you do
- 2 say what time you usually get up and go to bed
- 3 say what you do on a typical Monday morning
- 4 ask questions with the words below
 - What sports...?
- What languages...?
- What kind of music...? What TV shows...?





Yes, Can you but I can't sing? dance.

G can / can't V verb phrases: buy a newspaper, etc. P sentence stress

VOCABULARY verb phrases

Can you remember these verb phrases for things people do in their free time? Match the words.

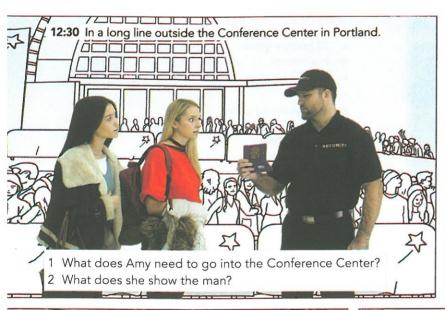
go play do to music TV a c have listen

exercise a coffee the guitar to the gym

Vp.158 Vocabulary Bank More verb phrases

2 LISTENING

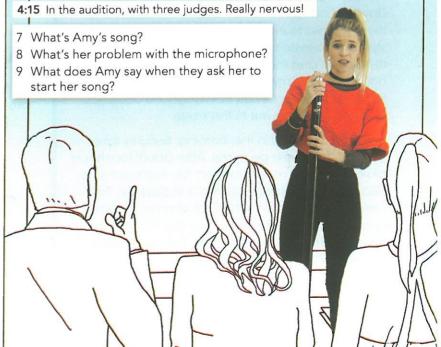
- a In your country, do you have TV competitions for people who do things well, e.g., sing, dance, or cook? Do you watch them? Why (not)?
- **b 0**5.2 Amy goes to an audition for a TV singing competition. Look at the pictures. Then listen and answer questions 1-9.
- c 🐠 5.3 Now listen to Amy, Justin, and Naomi sing. Vote for the person you want to be in the show.
- d 05.4 Listen to what the judges say. Do they agree with you? How does Amy feel?





- 3 Where does Amy's friend wait?
- 4 How many people does the woman call?





3 GRAMMAR can / can't

- a Look at four can / can't sentences (1–4) from Amy's story. Match them to their meanings (a–d).
 - 1 You can't sing!
 - 2 You can't come in if you don't have ID.
 - 3 Can you come with me, please?
 - 4 She can wait there.
 - a It isn't OK.
 - b It's possible.
 - c Please do it.
 - d You don't know how.

b Gp.132 Grammar Bank 5A

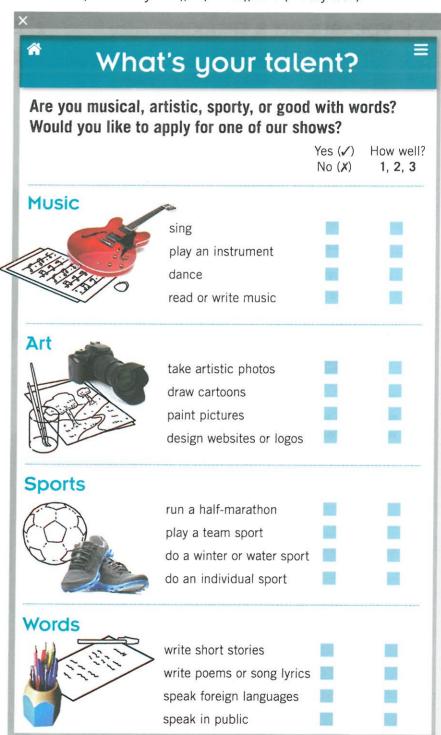
4 PRONUNCIATION

sentence stress

- a **05.6** Listen to the conversations. Then listen and repeat. <u>Copy</u> the <u>rhy</u>thm.
 - 1 A Can you play a <u>mu</u>sical <u>in</u>strument?
 - B Yes, I can.
 - A What can you play?
 - B I can play the guitar.
 - 2 A Where can I sit?
 - B You can sit over there.
 - 3 A Can I park here?
 - B No, you can't. You can't park here
- **b 05.7** Listen. Can you hear the difference?
 - 1 a I can sing.
 - b I can't sing.
 - 2 a She can dance very well.
 - b She can't dance very well.
 - 3 a He can cook.
 - b He can't cook.
 - 4 a I can come to the meeting.
 - b I can't come to the meeting.
 - 5 a You can park here.
 - b You can't park here.
 - 6 a I can drive.
 - b I can't drive.
- c 🐠 5.8 Listen. Circle a or b.

5 SPEAKING

a Work in pairs. Interview each other with the questionnaire. Ask Can you...? If the answer is Yes, I can, ask How well? and write 1 (= not very well), 2 (= well), or 3 (= very well).



- **b** Look at your partner's answers. What can he or she do? Can you think of any competitions or TV shows he or she can enter?
- c Change partners and tell your new partner what your first partner can or can't do.





What I'm are you trying to doing? study

G present continuous: be + verb + -ing **V** noise: verbs and verb phrases **P**/ŋ/

1 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING noise: verbs and verb phrases

- a Are your family or neighbors noisy? Answer questions 1-4 with a partner.
 - 1 How many family members do you live with?
 - 2 Are they...?
 - b noisy c not very noisy a very noisy
 - 3 Do you have neighbors...?
 - a upstairs b downstairs c next door
 - 4 Are they...?
 - a very noisy b noisy c not very noisy
- **10**5.9 Read part of an online forum. Guess the meaning of the highlighted verbs and verb phrases. Then listen to eight sounds and write 1-8 in the boxes.

NOISY FAMILY? NOISY NEIGHBORS?

Do you have a problem with noise, for example, when you want to study, or at night when you want to sleep? Tell us about your problems.

- The baby in the apartment upstairs cries all the time.
- My sister practices the piano for hours.
- The neighbors' dog barks all day and all night!
- The people next door often have noisy parties until 3:00 a.m.
- My son plays loud music in his room awful music, too.
- The couple next door argues a lot.
- The old people in the apartment next door have the TV on very loud - and their living room is next to my bedroom!
- The people next door have young children who make a lot of noise.
- c Now answer questions 5-7.
 - 5 What noises do your family or neighbors make? Are the noises a problem for you?
 - 6 Are you noisy? Do you do any of the things in b?
 - 7 Are people in your country noisy? Is this a problem?

GRAMMAR present continuous

5.10 Look at the picture of the houses and listen. Why are Max and his mother unhappy?



b Listen again and complete the conversations with verbs from the list.

cooking happening having listening making playing practicing trying Max Hey, Lucy. I'm 1___ _ to study, and you're 2_____ too much noise. Lucy It isn't noise, it's Beethoven. I'm _____ – I have a school concert tomorrow. You can study downstairs. Max I can't, Jake's 4_____ a video game. What about the kitchen? Lucy No, Mom's 5_____ dinner, and she's Max 6_____ to the radio. It's impossible to

2 Isabel Paul! Come here.
Paul Yes, dear? What's the matter?
Isabel What's 7 _____ next door? Why's their dog 8 ______? I can't hear the radio.
Paul They're 9 _____ a party in the yard.
Isabel Not again! Can you go and talk to them?
Paul Yeah, OK. It's their second party in

work in this house!



- c **10**5.11 Listen. What happens when Paul goes next door?
- d Complete the sentences with the correct form of the verb be.

+ They	having a party next door.
?	_ they playing music?
☐ No, they	playing music.
They're talking.	Look at the weather forecast

e Read the rule and circle the correct option.

We use the present continuous (be + verb + -ing) to talk about now / every day.

- f Gp.132 Grammar Bank 5B
- g 05.13 Listen to the sounds. What's happening? Write eight sentences.
 - 1 Somebody's cooking.

3 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING /ŋ/

a 05.14 Listen to the words and sounds. Then listen and repeat.

5		singing going doing studying
	singer	language wrong young
<i>"- (</i>		think bank pink thanks

b In pairs, point and ask and answer about the people in the picture of the houses.

What's she doing?)

(She's playing the piano. What are they doing?

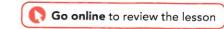
Communication Spot the differences A p.105 B p.110 Describe the pictures and find eight differences.

4 LISTENING

a [→] 5.15 Listen to a short conversation. What's the woman doing?

She's checking in...

- **b** Listen again. What words help you to understand the situation?
- c 05.16 Now listen to five more conversations. What are the people doing?
- d Listen again. For each conversation, write two words or phrases that help you to understand what's happening.





A city for all seasons

It doesn't Look! It's often snow snowing! here.

G simple present or present continuous? V the weather and seasons P places in Chicago

1 VOCABULARY & LISTENING

the weather and seasons

- a Look at the weather forecast for the week and answer the questions.
 - 1 What's the maximum temperature? What's the minimum?
 - 2 What time of year do you think it is?
 - 3 Do you think it's typical weather for Chicago?



- b Op.159 Vocabulary Bank The weather and dates Do Part 1.
- c **35.19** Listen to a travel guide talking about the weather in Chicago. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false). Then listen again and say why.
 - 1 It's often very hot or very cold.
 - 2 The normal temperature in the summer is 84°F.
 - 3 It's often above freezing for weeks at a time in the
 - 4 In the spring and the fall, the weather changes a lot.
 - 5 It's often windy in downtown Chicago.
- d What's the weather like where you live in different seasons?
- 2 GRAMMAR simple present or present continuous?
- Look at the photos and the messages. Why are Tim and Jane sad?



Jane MON 11:30 We're in Mexico - Cancún but it's raining! (8)

Lizzie MON 5:35 Poor you! Does it often rain there in March? I'm walking home, and it's a beautiful evening - the sun's shining. Sorry!



- Read the messages again, and focus on the highlighted verbs. When do we use the simple present? When do we use the present continuous?
- @p.132 Grammar Bank 5C
- d @Communication What do you do? What are you doing now? A p.105 B p.111 Ask and answer questions.

What to do in Chicago at different times of the year



In the spring

Go to the Chicago Riverwalk. This is one of the highlights of Chicago. It's open all year round, and it's 05 beautiful in the spring with all the trees and flowers. The Riverwalk is 3.4 miles long, and you can see tall buildings, boats on the river, outdoor 10 art, and famous bridges, including the Michigan Avenue Bridge. If you don't want to walk, you can sit and

15 meal at a café. Remember to bring a jacket—the weather can be cool and windy in the spring.

"people watch" or enjoy a

In the summer

Go to the open air theater 20 in Millennium Park, Open from April to November, this is a great place to listen to music, including classical, Broadway, and rock. Come 25 prepared with a blanket or chair and an umbrella or a plastic raincoat. Concerts at this open air theater usually take place in all kinds of 30 weather! You can buy a boxed meal or bring your

own food. It's very popular, so get there early.



READING & SPEAKING

Read the questions about things to do in Chicago. Then read the online guide and find the answers. Answer with CR (Chicago Riverwalk), OAT (open air theater), CM (Chicago Marathon), or AIC (Art Institute of Chicago).

Where can you...?

- 1 ____ watch people while you rest
- 2 ____ buy food to eat outside
- 3 ___ see art by the water
- 4 ____ see works by famous artists
- 5 ____ watch what's happening from different places
- 6 ____ sit on a blanket
- 7 ____ see famous people doing a sport
- 8 ____ have lunch, but not dinner

In the fall

Watch (or run) the 35 Chicago Marathon. One of the biggest marathons in the US takes place in the fall every year, usually

- in October. About 40,000 40 people, including top runners and celebrities, run 26.2 miles through the city. There's a fantastic
- atmosphere. You can watch 45 anywhere along the route, but the Chicago Theater and the finish, near Grant Park, are my favorite places. The fall in Chicago usually
- so means good weather, but be prepared for rain or sunjust in case!



In the winter

Visit the Art Institute of Chicago. Chicago is full of

- 55 wonderful museums, where you can happily spend a cold winter's day. My favorite is the Art Institute of Chicago. It's one of the world's top
- 60 museums. It has more than 300,000 works of art, including amazing collections of paintings, sculptures, ceramics, and glass.
- 65 Collections include works by artists Grant Wood, Edward Hopper, Georges Seurat, and Marc Chagall. It has special activities for children, and
- 70 several great cafés, open until 4:00. There is an entrance fee for adult visitors, but children under 13 are free.



b Look back at the guide. Complete the nouns for these adjectives.

1	famous <i>bridge</i>
2	great,
3	a fantastic
4	my favorite
5	good (or bad)
6	wonderful
7	amazing

Talk to a partner.

- Which of the four things would you like to do? Why?
- What are good things to do at different times of the year where you live?

PRONUNCIATION places in Chicago

105.21 Place names in Chicago are sometimes difficult for visitors to pronounce and understand. Listen and underline the stressed syllable in the bold words.

Wrig ley Field the Mag nif i cent Mile Bu cking ham Foun tain Tha lia Hall Sol dier Field

Millen ni um Park Ad ler Plan e tar i um Na vy Pier Hum boldt Park

Sky deck Chi ca go

- b Listen again and repeat the names.
- are in a Role-play with a partner. Imagine you are in a taxi. A is the driver, B is the passenger. Have a short conversation. Use the phrases below.

Α	В
Where do you want to go?	Is it far?
Where are you from?	Can you stop here, please?
Are you on vacation?	How much is it?
Do you like Chicago?	Can I pay by credit card?

Where do you want to go?)

(Skydeck Chicago, please. Is it far?

WRITING

- What social media do you use, e.g., Twitter or Facebook? Do your family and friends use the same ones as you?
- p.115 Writing Posting on social media Write posts to say what you're doing on vacation.

Practical English In a clothing store

buying clothes V clothes

VOCABULARY clothes

Match the words and photos.



- b 05.22 Listen and check.
- Cover the words and look at the photos. Say the words.

MEETING ON THE STREET



5.23 Watch or listen to Jenny and Rob. What problem does Rob have?



- b Watch or listen again. Complete the sentences.
 - __ for Jenny. 1 Rob has a ___
 - 2 Jenny has another meeting with
 - 3 Rob has an interview in _____ minutes.
 - 4 Jenny's meeting is at nine _____
 - 5 Rob needs to buy a new _____.
 - 6 They go to a clothing _____.
 - 7 Jenny needs to answer her _____
- c @5.24 Read the information box. Listen and repeat the phrases.



That's OK. I'm sorry. I'm so sorry. Don't worry. I'm really sorry. No problem.

d Cover the box. In pairs, practice apologizing and responding.

BUYING CLOTHES



Saying prices in the UK Saying prices in the US

\$5.00 = five dollars

£5.00 = five pounds

\$5.50 = five dollars and

£5.50 = five pounds fifty

fifty cents, five-fifty

50¢ = fifty cents

50p = fifty pence

Sizes

S = small, M = medium, L = large, XL = extra large

- 35.25 Watch or listen to Rob buying a shirt. Answer the questions.
 - 1 What size does Rob want?
 - 2 Does he try it on?
 - 3 How much is the shirt?

b Watch or listen again. Complete the You hear phrases.

You hear	You say
Can I 1 you?	Yes, what size is this shirt?
Let's see. It's a small. What ² do you need?	A medium.
This is a ³	Thanks. Where can I try it on?
The changing are over there.	Thank you.
5 is it?	It's fine. How much is it?
lt's £44.99.	

c 05.26 Watch or listen and repeat the **You say** phrases. Copy the <u>rhy</u>thm.



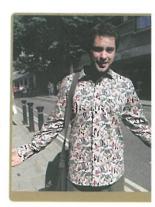
- d Read the information box. Then practice the conversation in **b** with a partner.
- e Substituting Substitution of the substitu
 - A (book open) You are the sales assistant. Begin Can I help you?
 - **B** (book closed) You are the customer. Buy a T-shirt, a jacket, or jeans.



4 D JENNY'S ON THE PHONE

- - 1 Jenny is talking to Eddie.
 - 2 She says she doesn't like London.
 - 3 She says she likes the people in the office.
 - 4 Jenny is standing outside the store.
 - 5 Eddie thinks that Rob is her boss.
 - 6 Jenny loves Rob's new shirt.
- b Watch or listen again. Say why the F sentences are false.





- Social English
 - 1 It's so cool!
- 5 Have fun!
- 2 Right now?
- 6 What's wrong?
- Wait a minute.
 I have to go.
- 7 No way!
- American and British English

store = American English

shop = British English

(nine)-thirty = American English

half past (nine) = British English

- d @5.28 Watch or listen and check. Then watch or listen and repeat the phrases.
- e Complete conversations A–G with **Social English** phrases 1–7. Practice with a partner.

Α		I can't find my phone. I don't know where it is.
В	What are you doing?	I'm talking to you!
С	What do you think of New York?	I love it!
D	I can't talk now. I'm at a party.	OK.
E	Let's go – come on!	I'm just finishing an email.
F	Would you like a coffee?	I never drink coffee in the evening.
G	Bye.	Bye. See you later.

CAN YOU ...?

apologize

buy clothes

say prices

A North African story

Do you know him?

Yes, but I don't like him.

G object pronouns: me, you, him, etc. V words in a story P /aɪ/, /ɪ/, and /i/

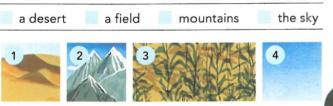


1 SPEAKING

- How do you usually read, on paper or on screen? Which do you prefer? Why?
- © Communication Reading in English p.105 What are your reading habits?

2 READING

- 06.1 Read and listen to Part 1 of a traditional story. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Who are Hassan and Walid? Where do they live?
 - 2 What kind of life do they have?
 - 3 In what way are Hassan and Walid different?
 - 4 What valuable thing does their mother have? Why doesn't she want to sell it?
 - 5 Why does Hassan decide to leave home?
- b Match the words and pictures.



Read Part 1 again. Then look at the picture. What can you see?

3 GRAMMAR object pronouns

Look at the highlighted words in Part 1 of the story. Who or what do they refer to?

them = Hassan and Walid

- @p.134 Grammar Bank 6A
- Listen and say the sentences with a pronoun instead of the name(s).
 - 1)) I like Anna. (I like her.

The Glass Bottle

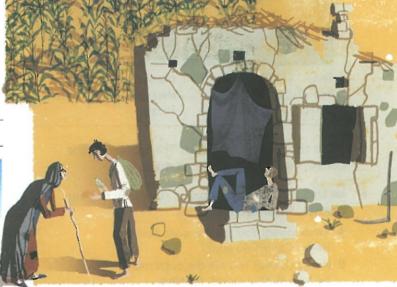
Hassan and Walid are brothers. They live in a small house in the desert, near the mountains, a long way from a town or village. They're very poor. They have no money and they have no animals. Their house only has two rooms. Every day is the same. They get up, and they have sweet black coffee for breakfast. Then Hassan works in the fields - but Walid just sits and looks at the hot, empty desert and the hot, empty sky. They live with their mother. She takes care of them, but she's old and tired.

One day she says, "We're poor and hungry. Why don't you leave here and find work? We need money for food and clothes."

"If you want some money, you have your silver ring - you can sell that," answers Walid.

"I can't sell it," she says. "It's your father's. Every night I look at it and remember him."

Hassan wants to help his mother, and he decides to leave home. His mother gives him bread, and water in a glass bottle. He kisses her, and he walks towards the mountains.



READING & LISTENING

- 4 Read and listen to Part 2 of the story. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Where does Hassan go?
 - 2 What happens when he finds the palace?
 - 3 Why is the palace unusual?
 - 4 What does he give the prince?
 - 5 Why is the prince surprised?
 - 6 What does the prince give Hassan?
 - 7 Why is Hassan's mother happy when he comes home?
 - 8 What is Walid's plan?

<mark>digi</mark> ZABAN



Hassan walks for five days through the mountains. The sun shines. At night, it's very cold. Then one evening, he arrives at a rich and beautiful palace. The prince in the palace welcomes 1 him. He gives him food and drink, and Hassan sleeps in a comfortable bed. There is one strange thing - the windows have no glass.

The next day, Hassan says goodbye. ²He wants to thank the prince and give him something, but he only has 3 his empty water bottle. He gives 4 it to 5 him. The prince is very surprised.

"What's this?" he says. "I can see through it! It's beautiful! It's wonderful!"

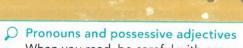
⁶He is very happy, and in return, he gives Hassan a box.

"Don't open 7 it until you get home," he says. "And be careful with it. It's very valuable."

Hassan walks through the mountains again, and after five days, he arrives home. Walid and 8 their mother watch 9 him open the box. He finds 100 gold coins inside. His mother is very happy! "Hassan, you clever boy!" she says. "Now 10 we can buy food and clothes!"

The next night, Walid makes a plan. "100 gold coins in return for a glass bottle," 11 he thinks. "If I give the prince my mother's silver ring, perhaps I can get 1,000 gold coins!"

So Walid gets up, goes very quietly into his mother's room, and takes 12 her ring from a box under her bed. The next morning, he asks his brother where the palace is, and he leaves.



When you read, be careful with pronouns and possessive adjectives, e.g., he, his, him. Make sure you know who (or what) they refer to.

b Read Part 2 of the story again. With a partner, say who or what the highlighted pronouns and possessive adjectives refer to.

The prince in the palace welcomes ¹him. him = Hassan

c 06.5 What do you think happens in Part 3 of the story? Listen and check.

(I think Walid goes to the palace and...

VOCABULARY words in a story

Look at these words from the story. Put them in the correct column.

arrive comfortable decide desert inside into leave mountain palace sell strange surprised through towards valuable village

verbs	nouns	prepositions
arrive		

06.6 Listen and check. Listen again and repeat.

PRONUNCIATION /aɪ/, /ɪ/, and /i/

5.7 Say the three groups of words and match them to a sound picture. Then listen and check.



1 him it his ring sit kiss

2 he she me meet read leave

3 my 1 buy sky nice high

1 a he's b his 4 a leave b live 2 a me b my 5 a kiss b keys 3 a it b eat 6 a we b why

◆ 6.9 Listen and check (✓) the word you hear.

d Practice saying the sentences.

- 1 His mother has a silver ring.
- 2 She looks at it and thinks of him.
- 3 That night he decides to leave home.
- 4 The prince gives him food and drink.
- 5 After five days, he arrives home.

7 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. A, you are Hassan. Tell the story to B until you get home from your trip.

I'm Hassan. I live with my mother and brother in the desert. We're very poor. One day, I decide to leave

B, you are Walid. Continue the story.

I'm Walid, Hassan's brother. When I see the 100 gold coins, I make a plan. At night, I take my mother's ring...



Go online to review the lesson



The second Friday in July



G like + (verb + -ing) V the date, ordinal numbers P /ð/ and /ð/, saying the date

1 VOCABULARY & PRONUNCIATION the date, $/\delta/$ and $/\theta/$

- a Can you remember the months of the year? Say them around the class.
- p.159 Vocabulary Bank The weather and dates Do Part 2
- c 06.11 Listen to the words and sounds. Then listen and repeat.

Ŏ	mother	this the that they
⊕	thumb	Thursday third thirteenth thirtieth

Ordinal numbers first, fourth, etc.

Some ordinal numbers can be difficult to say because they end in two or more consonant sounds, e.g., sixth /siks0/.

d 06.12 Listen and repeat the ordinal numbers. Then practice saying them.

fifth sixth eighth twelfth

e 06.13 How do you say these dates? Listen and check.

3/1 11/2 5/3 6/4 1/5 7/6 9/12 10/17 8/20 2/23 4/28 12/31

Listen again and repeat the dates. Copy the rhythm.

(March first

g What days are holidays in your country? What do people do on these days?



2 LISTENING

◎6.14 Listen to five conversations. Circle the ordinal number you hear.

15th	21st	26th	
3rd	13th	30th	
5th	6th	7th	
50th	51st	53rd	
6th	9th	16th	
	3rd 5th 50th	3rd 13th 5th 6th 50th 51st	3rd 13th 30th 5th 6th 7th 50th 51st 53rd

b Listen again. Match the ordinal numbers to these things. Write them in the chart in a.

a street a drink a birthday a floor a date

READING

Read the introduction on the forum. What's special about the second Friday in July and the third Monday in January?



Psychologist Dr. Cliff Arnall says the happiest day of the year is the second Friday in July. It's easy to see why - it's summer, it's warm outside, the evenings are light, and it's the day before a weekend! And the third Monday in January is the most depressing day of the year. Why? Because it's winter, the weather is usually gray and cold, the days are dark, and Monday is the first day of the working week. People are also often short of money after Christmas, and some people feel bad after breaking their New Year's resolutions.

Do you agree? What's your favorite month, day, and time? And what's your least favorite? 12 answers

Read the forum comments on p.49. Complete them with these months, days, and times.

February	June	Oct	tober	Dec	ember
Monday	Friday	Sat	urday	Sur	nday
6:30 a.m.	9:00 a	.m.	5:30	o.m.	7:45 p.m.

Look at all the highlighted adjectives. What do they mean?



- 4 GRAMMAR like + (verb + -ing)
- a Complete the chart with a verb phrase from the list.

l don't like	I don't mind	I hate	l like	l love
<u> </u>				
$\overline{\mathbf{c}}$				
<u>:</u>				
<u>::</u>				
×				

b Complete the sentences from the forum comments.

1 I love c	Christmas and New Year's Eve!
2 I like s	_ outside on long summer evenings.
3 I don't mind w_	– I like my job.
4 I don't like th_	about going back to work.
5 I hate g	up early.

What is the form of a verb after love, like, etc.?

c **G**p.134 Grammar Bank 6B

d In pairs, make true sentences beginning I like, I hate, etc., and the verb phrases below.

get up early have eggs for breakfast take selfies listen to music when I'm studying do housework on the weekend drive at night swim in a cold ocean watch soccer on TV play games on my phone shop online

5 SPEAKING & WRITING

a In pairs, interview your partner with the questions. Say why when you answer. Are you similar or different?

What's your favorite / least favorite month? What's your favorite / least favorite day of the week? What's your favorite / least favorite time of day?

My favorite month is July because I usually go on vacation then, and I love traveling...

b Write one positive and one negative comment for each section of the forum in 3.



6C Making music

What kind of music do you like?

I like classical music, and I love jazz.

G review: be or do? V music P /y/, giving opinions



VOCABULARY music

Look at the photos of musical instruments. Write the correct word in the instruments column.

accordion bass drums quitar keyboard piano saxophone trumpet violin

instruments	musicians
1 accordion	
2	
3	
4	
5	
6	
7	
8	
9	

- 06.16 Listen and check.
- Listen and complete the musicians column.
- d Listen again. Focus on the musicians and underline the stressed syllable. Then compare the two columns. When is the stress different?
- e 06.18 Cover the chart. Listen to the music and say the name of the instrument and the musician.
- Do you play a musical instrument? How good are you?

2 GRAMMAR review: be or do?

- a (Circle) the correct words.
 - 1 What kind of music are you / do you listen to?
 - 2 I'm not / I don't like hip hop.
 - 3 She isn't / doesn't listening to you.
 - 4 Are you / Do you play in a band?
 - 5 Where is / does Adele from?

© p.134 Grammar Bank 6C

- **106.21** Listen and make the question.
 - 1)) She's American. (Is she American?
 - 2) He plays the piano. (Does he play the piano?



3 SPEAKING

Read the questionnaire and think about your answers. Then interview a partner with the questionnaire.

Ask for more information. Do you have similar musical tastes and habits?

MY MUSIC

- 1 What kinds of music do you like? classical music folk hip hop jazz pop reggae other
- 2 How often do you...? go to concerts go dancing watch music videos online download music look for song lyrics on the internet
- 3 How do you usually listen to music? on the radio online on my phone on CDs
- 4 When you're in a car, what do you prefer listening to? the radio (which station?) my own music
- 5 When do you listen to music? When I'm exercising. When I'm traveling on public transportation. When I'm walking around town. When I'm working or studying. When I'm relaxing.
- 6 What kind of music do you like listening to when you are...?
- 7 Are you listening to a particular song or piece of music a lot right now?
- 8 Do you sing or play in a group, e.g., a choir or band? What kind of music do you sing or play?

PRONUNCIATION /y/, giving opinions

Then listen and repeat.



yacht

you yellow young your yoga year



☐ Hidden /y/ sound

Some words with the /u/ sound (spelled with u or ew) also have a /y/ sound before the /u/, e.g., music/'myuzık/ NOT /muzık/.

C	
	saying them. Copy the stress and intonation.

I like him. He's great.

I really like her. She's fantastic.

I don't like them. They're awful.

I don't like it. It's terrible.

Write the names of six musicians and bands: three you love and three you hate. Then in pairs, ask your partner What do you think of ...?

Male musicians	7.5 (0/4) 1 - 0.5 (4)	
Female musicians		
Bands		

VIDEO LISTENING

Do you have street performers where you live? Do you give them money? Why (not)?

street performer [N AmE /strit pər'fərmər/]/ busker [BrE /basker/] noun a person who performs in public places and asks for money

b Watch the documentary A street performer. Do you think Charlotte likes her job?



- Watch again and mark the sentences T (true) or F (false). Correct the F sentences.
 - 1 Charlotte only performs in the morning.
 - 2 Street performers usually play pop or folk songs.
 - 3 Street performers can't play anywhere they want to.
 - 4 Charlotte always plays in the same area of the city.
 - 5 She only plays other people's songs.
 - 6 Charlotte prefers performing in the summer to performing in the winter.
- d Do you think Charlotte is a good musician? Would you give her money?

6 WRITING

@p.115 Writing An informal email Write an email to a friend.



Go online to watch the video and review the lesson

digi ZABAN Review and Check

GR/	AMMAR
Circle	e)a, b, or c.
1	She the piano.
	a can play b can to play c cans play
2	come tonight?
2	a Do you can b You can c Can you
3	A What's that noise? B a party upstairs.
1	a They having b They're having c They're have The weather is cold, but raining.
4	a it doesn't b it isn't c it not
5	A What doing? B I'm studying for an exam.
0.55	a are you b do you c you are
6	The sun! Let's go for a walk.
	a shine b shines c is shining
7	The museum at 2:00 on Mondays.
100	a closes b is closing c close
8	A What? B I'm a nurse.
0	a are you doing b do you do c do you
9	Our son always calls every day. a we b us c our
10	Is your sister at home? I need to speak to
10	a him b she c her
11	Do you like housework?
	a doing b do c making
12	I don't mind early.
	a get up b getting up c to get up
13	A hungry? B Yes. What's for dinner?

- **VOCABULARY**
- a Complete the phrases with these verbs.

a Do you b Have you c Are you

a are you b do you c you are

15 What time ____ she usually go to bed?

14 What song ____ listening to?

a do b is c does

buy run	call take		forget	have	hear	play
1 _		a no	ise			
2		a mı	usical ins	trumen	t	
3		som	ebody's	birthda	ıy	
4 _		a pre	esent for	your m	other	
5		som	ebody a	secret		
6		а ра	rty			
7 _		a ph	oto			
8		a ma	rathon			
9		a tax	ci			
0		the t	ango			

- b Complete the sentences with at, for, in, on, or to.
 - 1 She goes to bed ____ about 11 o'clock.
 - 2 They have their TV ____ very loud.
 - 3 I can't find the keys. Can you look ____ them?
 - 4 I need to talk ____ the doctor.
 - 5 I'm coming! Wait ____ me!
 - 6 My birthday's ____ July.
 - 7 Their wedding is ____ March 2nd.
- c Circle the word that is different.
 - 1 cloudy fog sunny windy
 - 2 cold shine snow rain
 - 3 fall season spring winter
 - 4 first seven third twelfth
 - 5 twenty-second twenty-five twenty-one twenty-three
 - 6 desert field mountain ring
 - 7 accordion drummer guitar violin
 - 8 street performer concert singer trumpeter

PRONUNCIATION

Practice the words and sounds.

Vowel sounds



bull



boot



train



bike

Consonant sounds









singer

thumb

mother

yacht

- b Pp.166-7 Sound Bank Say more words for each sound.
- c What sound do the pink letters have in these words?
 - 1 cook 2 sitting 3 tenth 4 there 5 violin
- d Underline the stressed syllable.
 - 1 neigh bor
- 3 fiftileth
- 5 pilalnist

- 2 re mem ber
- 4 sax ophone

CAN YOU understand this text?

- a Read the article once. What is *your* perfect "wake-up song"?
- b Read the article again. Circle a, b, or c.
 - 1 Dr. Greenberg's list comes from information from
 - a the internet b his friends c his students
 - 2 One of the things Dr. Greenberg *doesn't* say is important in the song is _____.
 - a the words b the instruments c the singer
 - 3 He says that waking up ____ can help most people feel good all day.
 - a to Coldplay b to the right music c early in the morning
 - 4 ____ doesn't have a wake-up song. a Sandy b Martha c Martin
- CAN YOU understand these people?



- 1 Duncan ____.
 - a can't play the violin very well
 - b can't play the violin
 - c can play the violin very well
- 2 Alice's neighbors ____ make a noise.
 - a always b sometimes
- 3 Tiffany's favorite month is _____
 - a October b November
- c December

c never

- 4 Stephen doesn't like ____
 - a opera b country music
 - c the band Wye Oak
- 5 Right now, Dasha is reading ____
 - a a modern novel
 - b a book about French history
 - c a book about the Russian Revolution

CAN YOU say this in English?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check (\checkmark) the box if you can do these things.

Can you...?

- 1 say two things you can do well, and two things you can't do (e.g., cook)
- 2 say three things you can or can't do in class (e.g., use your cell phone)

THE MOMENT I WAKE UP...

Getting up in the morning is hard, but for many people, music seems to help them start the day. There is actually a list of perfect "wake-up songs" compiled by a psychologist, David M. Greenberg, using data from the music download website, Spotify.

When choosing the perfect "wake-up songs," Greenberg considered things like how the music builds up, positive lyrics, and strong rhythm. He says that the music needs to start gently, and then slowly build up to help people to wake up. It must have positive lyrics to change people's mood from

change people's mood from bad to good. The rhythm also needs to be strong, with a lot of bass and drums.

Greenberg's top choice of song is Viva La Vida, by Coldplay, which has all the three necessary elements. "Science shows that music affects us in all kinds of ways, including emotionally, physiologically, and in the brain," he says. "The right music

 like Viva La Vida, with its positive energy and strong momentum

 can help you wake up and feel energetic for the rest of your day."

What's your favorite "wake-up song"? Leave your comments below.

Comments:

- Mine is definitely Say a Little Prayer by Aretha Franklin.
 I always play it first thing in the morning. Sandy
- I like getting up to a song by Imagine Dragons, called On Top of the World. I think it fits Dr. Greenberg's criteria because it's really positive! Martha
- I hate listening to music when I wake up. I prefer listening to the early morning news. Then I can start the day knowing what's happening in the world. *Martin*

Adapted from a website

- 3 say what kind of books you usually read, and what you are reading right now
- 4 ask questions with the words below
 - ...tired?
 - ...like watching sports on TV?
 - ...enjoying your English classes?
 - ...play a musical instrument?



Who was he? He was a famous painter.

G simple past of be: was / were V word formation: write → writer P sentence stress

GRAMMAR simple past of be

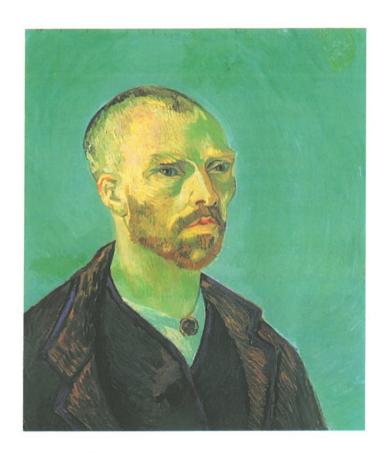
- a Look at a self-portrait by a famous painter. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Do you know who he is?
 - 2 How old do you think he is in this painting?
 - 3 Do you know any of his paintings? Do you like them?
- b 07.1 Listen to an audio guide. Check your answers to 1 and 2 in a.
- c Listen again. Choose a, b, or c.
 - 1 He was born in ___ in 1853. a Belgium b the Netherlands c Germany
 - 2 His parents weren't_ a artists b married c poor
 - 3 Before he was a painter, he was a ___ a teacher b doctor c lawyer
 - 4 There are ____ photos of him when he was young. a no balot of c not many
 - 5 This self-portrait was a present for the painter ____. a Monet b Picasso c Gauguin
 - 6 The relationship between the two painters wasn't ___ a bad b easy c complicated
 - 7 He was only ____ when he died. a 27 b 37 c 47
 - 8 During his life, his paintings were ___ a unpopular b valuable c famous
- d Look at the highlighted verbs in c. Complete the

Present	is	are	isn't	aren't
Past				

@p.136 Grammar Bank 7A

PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

- 10 7.3 Listen and repeat. Copy the rhythm.
 - He was a painter. I was born in Mexico. They were good friends.
 - ☐ He <u>wasn't married</u>. They weren't very <u>happy</u>.
 - ? Where were you born? Where was the hotel? Was it expensive? No, it wasn't. Were they at the concert? Yes, they were.
- b 07.4 Listen. Say the sentences in the simple past.
 - 1)) I'm at home. (I was at home.



READING

- Look at three self-portraits on p.55. Do you think the self-portraits look like the people in the photos?
- Read the three biographies and number the events in the correct order, 1-3.

Kurt Vonnegut

- Slaughterhouse-Five was a bestseller.
- He was a soldier.
- He was a painter.

Billy Dee Williams

- He was in his first movie.
- He was very successful as an actor.
- He was an art student.

Adele

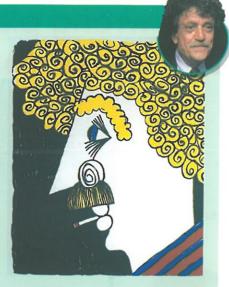
- She wasn't very interested in schoolwork.
- 19 was a bestseller.
- She was a student with singer Jessie J.
- c Read the biographies again. Then cover them. What can you remember about each person?
- Which of the four self-portraits in this lesson do you like the most? Why?

Kurt Vonnegut

Kurt Vonnegut was an American writer. He was born in 1922 in Indianapolis. He was a soldier during World War II, and was in

- 05 a prison camp in Germany from 1944 to 1945. His first novel was Player Piano, published in 1952, but it wasn't a success. However, his novel Slaughterhouse-Five, an anti-
- 10 war book, was a best-seller, and was made into a movie in 1972. In his later life, he was interested in politics and painting. His art was an escape from the "work"





Billy Dee Williams

Billy Dee Williams is an American actor. He was born in New York in 1937. His father was a caretaker and his mother was an elevator operator. He was a

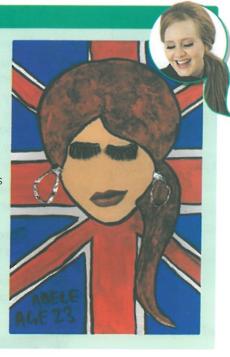
- 20 student at the High School of Music & Art. He was a theater actor for 15 years, and in 1959, he was in his first movie. He was very successful in the 1980s. when he was in two Star Wars movies,
- 25 The Empire Strikes Back and Return of the Jedi. Before he was an actor, Williams was at a fine arts academy in New York, and this self-portrait is in the National Portrait Gallery in
- 30 Washington, D.C.



Adele

Adele is a British singer and songwriter. She was born Adele Laurie Blue Adkins in London in 1988. When she was a child, she

- 35 was much more interested in music than in schoolwork. When she was 14, her musical tastes were very different from most teenagers - she was a big fan of
- 40 Billie Holiday and Eminem. She was a performing arts student at the BRIT School in London, where she was a classmate of singers Leona Lewis and Jessie J.
- 45 Her first album, 19, in 2008, was an immediate success, and she is now a major star. Adele isn't a painter; this self-portrait was for an online art project called Face Britain.



VOCABULARY word formation

Find words in the biographies for people's jobs made from these verbs.

1	write	 3	sing	
2	act	4	paint	

Word building: professions

We often add -er or -or to a verb, e.g., writer, actor.

We often add -ian or -ist to a noun, e.g., musician, pianist.

- b Look at the two groups below. Are the words verbs or nouns? Can you make the words for the jobs?
 - 1 compose dance direct invent
 - 2 art novel politics science
- 7.5 Listen and check. Underline the stressed syllable. Practice saying the words.
- Write the names of four famous people in each circle. Then change circles. Ask a partner about the people in his / her circles.

Who's Sia?) (She's an Australian singer.

Who was Alexander Graham Bell?

He was an American scientist.



Dead

SPEAKING

Talk to a partner.

Do you ever take selfies?



Do you have any on your phone?

Where were you?

When was it?

Who were you with?



Why don't you take them?

Why do you think other people take them?

Do any of your friends and family take them?

Do you have any photos of you on your phone that are not selfies? Where were you?



Wrong name, wrong place

Where did they want to go?

They wanted to go to Granada.

G simple past: regular verbs V past time expressions P -ed endings

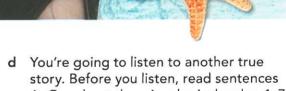
READING & LISTENING

- Read the beginning of a true story about a problem with a flight. Answer the questions.
 - 1 Where did Adam and India want to travel?
 - 2 Who booked the tickets?

order, 1-6.

3 What problem do you think there was with the booking?





Α ...to pay \$288, so he decided to change his last name to West. It was free to change his name, but then he needed a new passport with his new name. The new passport...

Read the rest of the story. Put the parts in the correct

- B 1 Unfortunately it wasn't the right name - "Adam West" is the name of an actor who played Batman in the 1960s. Adam...
- C ...that it was possible, but he needed to pay \$288 - double the cost of the flight. He didn't want...
- D ... used the name on his Facebook page as a joke. His real name is Adam Armstrong. When Adam...
- E ... realized the mistake, he called Ryanair. He asked them to change the last name on his booking. Ryanair replied...
- F ...was \$135 - so Adam saved \$153. And he and India traveled to Ibiza on June 11th.
- Do you think Adam's solution was a good one? Why (not)?

- A-G and put them in a logical order, 1-7.
 - A They asked the flight attendant a question.
 - B Edward booked the flights.
 - 1 C Edward and Lowell wanted to go on vacation to Spain.
 - D They parked their car.
 - E They changed planes at Heathrow Airport.
 - F They looked for flights online.
 - G They checked into their first flight.
- e 07.6 Now listen to the first part of the story. Was your order in d correct?
- f 07.7 Listen to the end of the story. What was the problem?
- Whose fault was the problem in each story?



- 2 GRAMMAR simple past: regular verbs
- a Find the past tense of these verbs in **1b**. Write them in the chart.

	Present	Past
1	ask	
2	decide	
3	reply	
4	don't want	

b	\bigcirc 7.8 Listen to an extract from the		
	second story. What's the r	missing word?	
		neck the airport	
	when you booked?		

d Stand up and move around the class. Ask *Did you...?* questions about yesterday with the verb phrases below. When somebody answers *Yes, I did.*, write their name.

YESTERDAY

Find a person who...

watched soccer on TV
called a taxi
studied for an exam
cooked dinner
arrived at work / school late
listened to the radio
started a new book
worked / studied until late
played a computer or video game

Did you watch soccer on TV yesterday?

(No, I didn't. Did you call a taxi...?

3 PRONUNCIATION -ed endings

Simple past regular verbs

The e in -ed is not usually pronounced, and -ed is pronounced /d/ or /t/, e.g., closed /klouzd/, stopped /stapt/.

The -ed is pronounced /ɪd/ only in verbs that end with the sound /t/ or /d/, e.g., wait – waited /ˈwertɪd/, decide – decided /dɪˈsaɪdɪd/.

a 07.10 Listen and repeat the sentences.

1		I called a taxi. I used an app. It arrived in five minutes.
2	at N	We talked about a vacation. We looked online. We booked a hotel.
3	/ id /	He needed a passport. He wanted it fast. He waited a long time.

asked cooked ended finished liked lived painted played started stopped traveled watched worked

- c <a>07.12 Listen to some verb phrases. Make true + or sentences about yesterday.
 - 1)) play tennis (| didn't play tennis yesterday.

4 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING

past time expressions

a Number the past time expressions 1–10.

	yesterday morning		last week
	last night		last summer
	last month		the day before yesterday
	three days ago		a year ago
1	five minutes ago	10	in 2017

Past time expressions

We say last week, last month
NOT the last week, the last month.

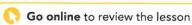
- b 07.13 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.
- c Complete the sentence for each activity with a past time expression.

When was the last time?

l traveled by bus	I booked some tickets
I posted a photo online	I downloaded a song
I walked more than 5 miles	I played a sport
I watched a really good movie	I danced at a party
l arrived late for something	

Work in pairs. A tell your partner your first sentence.
 B ask for more information.

I traveled by bus this morning. Where to?





Happy New Year?

What did you do?

We went to a party

G simple past: irregular verbs V go, have, get P sentence stress

READING

- When is New Year's Eve? Is it an important celebration in your country?
- **b** Read three stories. Who had...?
 - a great evening
 - an OK evening
 - a terrible evening
- c Read the stories again. Complete the sentences with A (Andy), J (Jenny), or M (Mina).
 - 1 ____ was outside at midnight.
 - 2 ____ didn't know exactly when midnight was.
 - 3 ____ was alone at midnight.
 - 4 ____ was at work at midnight.
 - 5 ____ heard the celebrations, but didn't see them.
 - 6 ____ was surprised by something people did.
- d How do people celebrate New Year's Eve in your country? Do you think most people enjoy it? Why (not)?

2 GRAMMAR simple past: irregular verbs

With a partner, find the past tense of these irregular verbs in the stories.

buy	bought	/bot/
can		/kud/
come	n	/kerm/
feel		/fclt/
find		/faund/
get		/gat/
go	8	/went/
have		/hæd/
know		/nu/
put on	8	/put an/
say		/sed/
sing		/sæŋ/
take	1	/tuk/
think		/tce/
wear		/wor/

- b 07.14 Listen and check. Practice saying the verbs.
- c @p.136 Grammar Bank 7C

NEW YEAR'S EVE-ONE TO REMEMBER OR ONE TO FORGET?

MINA This was last year, and I went to a hotel with some friends. It had a restaurant on the top floor, and that's where the party was. We got there at 05 about 11:00. About half an hour before midnight I realized I didn't have my phone - it was in my car. So I took the elevator down to the parking lot. I found my phone, and then I got back into the 10 elevator - I was the only person in it. But then, between the third and fourth floors, the elevator stopped completely and I couldn't get out. I pressed the button and asked for help, but a guy said there 15 was an electrical problem and I needed to wait. Then a few minutes later, I could hear people outside celebrating. It was awful - I didn't get out until almost 1:00 in the morning. And on top of it all, my 20 friends didn't realize that I wasn't there!





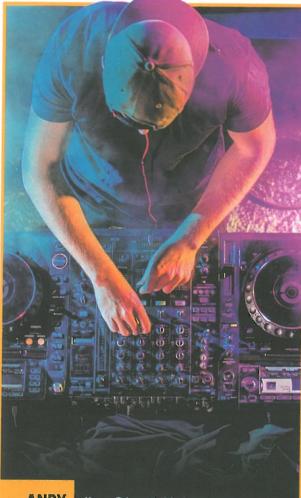
I had a fantastic New Year's Eve in Iceland in 2013. First, we went to a really expensive restaurant for dinner. It was early, about 6:00, because that's when people have dinner in Iceland. I wore a fantastic dress, but after dinner we got a taxi back to the hotel and I put on boots and a warm 25 jacket. Then we went out and watched the amazing fireworks. Suddenly, at about 10:00, everyone went home to watch TV - there's this famous TV show they always watch on New Year's Eve! It was really strange – the streets were empty for a little bit. But then just before midnight, people came out again and danced and sang till about 5:00 in the morning. It was incredible.

3 VOCABULARY go, have, get

a Can you remember these phrases? Write went, had, or got.

1	1	to a hotel with some friends
2	lt	_ a restaurant on the top floo
3	We	there at about 11:00.
4	1	_ a fantastic New Year's Eve.
5	We	to a really expensive
	restaurant.	
6	\N/e	a taxi back to the hotel

b Op.160 Vocabulary Bank go, have, get



a few years ago. It was my first time at a New Year's Eve party, and I planned all the music really carefully. I knew exactly which tracks I was going to play. The first part of the night was fine, but just when I thought it was time to start the countdown to midnight, I saw that people were all at the bar, not on the dance floor, and the TVs were on. On the screens I could see fireworks! I looked at my watch and I realized it was about two

40 minutes slow! I felt really stupid. I bought a new watch the next day!

4 LISTENING

a @7.17 Listen to Denisa from Slovakia talk about a memorable New Year's Eve. Where was Denisa at midnight?



b Can you remember what she says about these people and things?

- 1 Marcelo
 2 white clothes
 3 Marcelo's mother
 5 Copacabana
 6 a show
 7 almost midnight
- 4 dinner 8 a swim at Praia do Arpoador
- c Listen again and check.
- d Would you like to spend New Year's Eve in Rio? Is there anywhere else in the world you'd like to spend it?

5 PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

A memorable New Year's Eve

a Look at the questions. What words are missing?

 1 What year ________ it?

 2 Where ________ you?

 3 Who ________ with?

 4 Where ________ have dinner?

 5 What ________ do before midnight?

 6 What _______ do at midnight?

 7 What _______ do after midnight?

 8 What _______ do after midnight?

 9 How ______ the weather?

 10 What time _______ go to bed?

 11 _______ have a good time?

SPEAKING & WRITING

- a Think about a time when you had a memorable New Year's Eve. Look at the questions in **5a** and plan your answers. Add all the extra information you can.
- b Interview each other about your New Year's Eve.
- Write about your New Year's Eve. Answer the questions in
 5a, and use the stories in 1 to help you.



Practical English Getting lost

asking for directions V directions

A FREE MORNING



37.19 Watch or listen to Rob and Jenny planning their free morning. What's the problem?



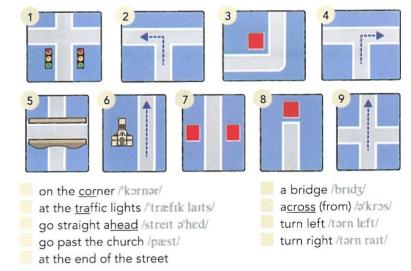
Watch or listen again. Complete the sentences with a word, a name, or a number.

1	Rob suggests that they go	
2	He says that they can b	ikes
3	calls	
4	Rob needs to interview an	
5	Rob asks if he can do the interview	
	on	
6	Rob and Jenny arrange to meet at	
	o'clock outside the	
	Tate Modern.	

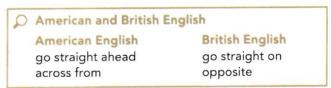
(the) Tate Modern a famous art gallery in London

VOCABULARY directions

Match the phrases and pictures.

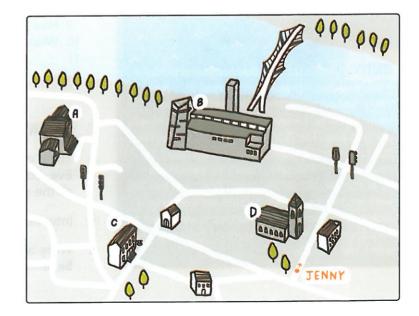


- b @7.20 Listen and check.
- Cover the phrases and look at the pictures. Say the phrases.



ASKING FOR DIRECTIONS

37.21 Jenny is trying to find the Tate Modern. Watch or listen. Is it A, B, C, or D? How many people does she ask?





b Watch or listen again. Complete the You hear phrases.

You say	You hear
Excuse me, please. Where's the Tate Modern?	1, I don't live here.
Excuse me. Is the Tate Modern near here?	The Tate Modern? It's near here, but I don't know exactly 2 Sorry.
Thank you.	
Excuse me. Can you tell me the way to the Tate Modern, please?	Yes, of course. Go straight on. Go 3 the church. Then turn 4 at the traffic lights. And it's at the end of the street.
Sorry, could you say that again, please?	Yes, go straight on. You can't 5 it!
Thank you.	

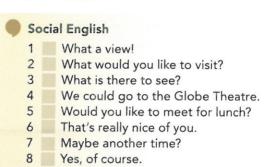
- c **37.22** Watch or listen and repeat the **You say** phrases. <u>Copy</u> the <u>rhy</u>thm.
- d Practice the conversation with a partner.
 - Can you...? or Could you...?
 Can you tell me the way to the
 Tate Modern?
 Could you say that again, please?
 We can use Can you...? or Could
 you...? when we want to ask another
 person to do something. Could you...?
 is more polite.
- e 🔐 In pairs, role-play the conversation.

You are where Jenny is.

- A Ask for directions to building A (the library). Begin Excuse me, where's....
- **B** Give directions. Then change roles. **B** ask for directions to building C (the post office).

4 D JENNY AND ROB GO SIGHTSEEING

- a **07.23** Watch or listen to Rob and Jenny. Circle the correct option.
 - 1 The Millennium / London Bridge is only for people.
 - 2 It was the first new bridge over the Thames in 100 / 200 years.
 - 3 Jenny doesn't like the theater. / Shakespeare.
 - 4 Jenny can / can't meet Daniel for lunch.
 - 5 There's a great gift shop / restaurant on the top floor of the Tate Modern.
 - 6 The Tate Modern was a power / train station until 1981.
- b Look at the Social English phrases. Who says them: Jenny, Rob, or Daniel?



- d Complete conversations A–H with **Social English** phrases 1–8. Practice with a partner.

Α	What can we do this afternoon?	I love Shakespeare!	
В	We have all day in Oxford.	I'd like to see the colleges and the High Street.	
C	Let's go to the Tate Modern.	It's closed today.	
D	What are you doing at noon?	Yes, I'd love to.	
E	I can see St. Paul's cathedral.	Yes, and the London Eye's over there.	
F	Can you tell me the way to Victoria Station?	Go straight down there and turn left.	
G	I hear the British Museum is great.	Right now, there's a new exhibition about the Greeks.	
Н	Would you like to go out tonight?	But I'm afraid I'm busy tonight.	

CAN YOU...?

- ask for and understand directions
- give simple directions
- ask somebody to do something in a polite way



Go online to watch the video, review the lesson, and check your progress



A murder mystery

Did you love your husband?

No. But I didn't kill him.

G simple past: regular and irregular **V** irregular verbs

P simple past verbs

READING

Read about the Travers murder and look at the photos of the victim and the suspects. Then cover the text and look at the photos. Can you remember who the people are?

Who's Amanda?) (She's Jeremy's wife.

- b @8.1 Read and listen to the story. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false). Correct the F sentences.
 - 1 Somebody killed Jeremy between 11:00 p.m. and 7:00 a.m.
 - 2 The detective questioned Amanda in the living room.
 - 3 Jeremy went to bed before Amanda.
 - 4 Amanda and Jeremy slept in the same room.
 - 5 Somebody opened and closed Amanda's door.
 - 6 Amanda got up at 7:00.
 - 7 Amanda didn't love Jeremy.

Detective Granger arrived at about 9:00. He ¹ was a tall man with a big mustache. Amanda, Barbara, Claudia, and Gordon ² were in the living room. The detective 3 came in.

"Mr. Travers died between midnight last night and 7:00 this morning," he 4 said. "Somebody in this room killed him." He looked at them one by one, but nobody 5 spoke.

"Mrs. Travers, I want to talk to you first. Come into the library with me, please."

Amanda followed the detective into the library and they ⁶ sat down.

"What did your husband do after dinner last night?"

"We finished dinner at about 9:30. Then Jeremy said he was tired and he 7 went to bed."

"Did you go to bed then?"

"No, I didn't. I went for a walk in the yard."

"What time did you go to bed?"

"At about a quarter to twelve."

"Was your husband asleep?"

"I don't know, Dectective. We...we 8 slept in different rooms. But I 9 saw that his door was closed."

"Did you hear anything when you were in your room?"

"Yes, I ¹⁰heard Jeremy's bedroom door. It opened. I ¹¹thought it was Jeremy. Then it closed again. I 12 read in bed for half an hour and then I went to sleep."

"What time did you get up this morning?"

"I ¹³ got up at about 7:15. I ¹⁴had breakfast and at 8:00 I ¹⁵ took a cup of tea to my husband. I 16 found him in bed. He was...dead."

"Tell me, Mrs. Travers, did you love your husband?"

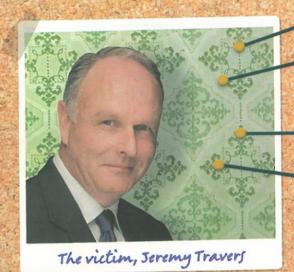
"Jeremy is...was a difficult man."

"But did you love him, Mrs. Travers?"

"No, Detective. I hated him."

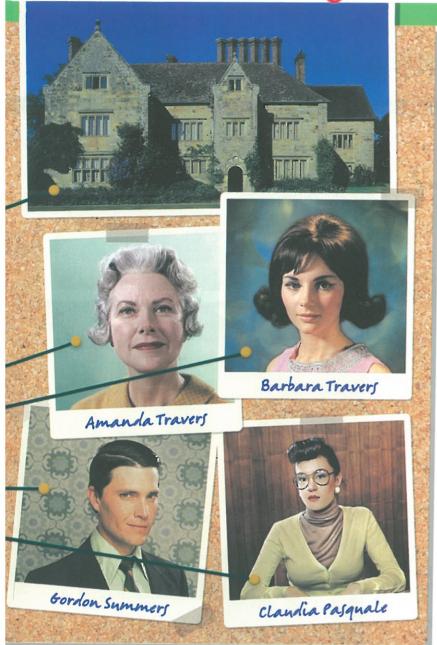
The Travers

- June 22, 1965 Jeremy Travers's 60th birthday
- He had dinner at his country house with:
 - Amanda, his wife
 - Barbara, his daughter
 - Gordon, his business partner
 - Claudia, his secretary.
- · The next morning, Amanda Travers went to her husband's bedroom. She found him dead.



2 PRONUNCIATION simple past verbs

- a Look at the highlighted irregular verbs in the story. What are the base forms?
 - 2 be were 1 be - was
 - 3 come came
- b @8.2 Listen and check. Then listen and repeat.
- c **38.3** Find and <u>underline</u> nine simple past + regular verbs in the story. How do you pronounce them? Listen and check. Then listen and repeat the verbs and phrases.
 -)) arrived (Detective Granger arrived.



- b Compare your chart with a partner. Who do you think was the murderer: Amanda, Barbara, Gordon, or Claudia? Why?

4 GRAMMAR & VOCABULARY simple past: regular and irregular

a Cover the story and look at these verbs. Are they regular or irregular in the simple past? Write the simple past form + and - for each verb.

arrive close come hate kill sit sleep speak

arrive arrived didn't arrive

- b \(\bigcit 8.8 \) Listen and check.
- d p.165 Irregular verbs Check (/) the irregular verbs you know. Choose three new ones and learn them.

5 SPEAKING

What time did you get home? At about 11:30.

G Communication Police interview A p.106 B p.111 Interview robbery suspects. Are they telling the truth?

3 LISTENING

	Amanda	Barbara	Gordon	Claudia
What did he / she do after dinner?	She went for a walk.			
What time did he / she go to bed?	11:45.			
Did he / she hear anything?	Jeremy's door opened and closed.			
Did he / she have a motive?	She hated him.			

B A house with a history

Is there a dishwasher?

No, there

G there is / there are, some / any + plural nouns V the house P /ɛr/ and /ɪr/

1 VOCABULARY the house

- Read the advertisement. Would you like to rent this house? Why (not)?
- b Cover the advertisement. What can you remember about the house?
- c With a partner, think of three things you usually find in a bedroom, a bathroom, and a living room.
- Op.161 Vocabulary Bank The house

2 LISTENING

- 38.11 Kim and Leo are a young couple. They want to rent the house in 1. Cover the conversation and listen. Which three rooms in the house do they go into?
- b Listen again and complete the conversation.

K	The	vard's	wonderful,	I love it.
-		1		

- L Is there a 1 garage ?
- B Oh yes, there's a big garage over there.
- K You lived in this house, is that right, Mrs. ...?
- B Miss Travers. But call me Barbara, dear. Yes, I lived here. A long time ago. Now I live in town. Let's go inside the house...

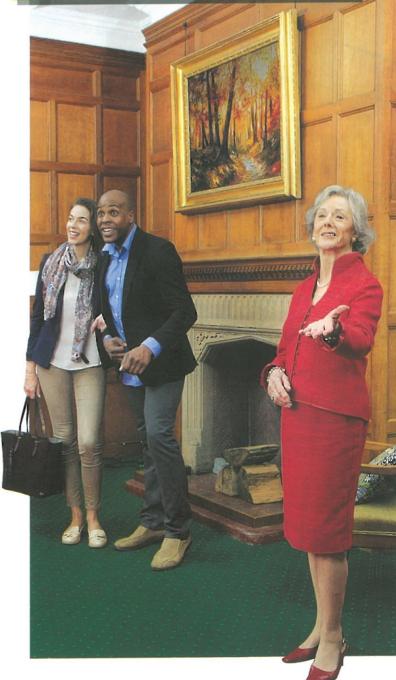
This is the 2 . It's a lovely room, very bright. And this is the library...

- L Wow! There's a library, Kim!
- K I love the furniture, the old sofa, the armchairs,
- B And this is the 4 ____. As you can see, it's very bia.
- K Is there a dishwasher?
- B No, there isn't. It's an old house.
- L Never mind. I think it's nice. Is there a 5 downstairs?
- B Yes, there's one 6_____ and there are three upstairs.
- K Are there any 7_ with children?
- B No, there aren't any neighbors near here. But there are some families with children in town.
- K That's great. We have two children.
- B Very nice, dear. Now, let's go 8_
- the bedrooms? Whose bedroom was it? Do they decide to rent the house?

FOR RENT

Beautiful country house. Very quiet. Six bedrooms, four bathrooms, large vard. Five miles from town. Perfect family house. Low price.







d ①8.13 Kim and Leo go to a local restaurant. Listen and complete extracts 1–6 from their conversation. What do you think they find out?

Leo	Well, here's to ou	r nev	v ¹
Leo	Is something 2		?
Waiter	Some people ³ _one who did it.		that she was the
Waiter	Didn't she 4		you?
Kim	Tell us ⁵	_?	
Kim	Oh, how 6	!	

- e **10** 8.14 Now listen to the whole conversation. What do Kim and Leo decide to do in the end? Why?
- **3 GRAMMAR** there is / there are, some / any + plural nouns
- a In groups of three, practice the conversation in **2b**. Then complete the chart.

singular	plural
+ There's a library.	There some families in town.
There a dishwasher.	There aren't any neighbors.
?	
a garage?	any neighbors?

- b What's the difference between...?
 - 1 There are three families in town.
 - 2 There are some families in town.
- d G Communication Is there...? Are there...? A p.106 B p.111 Ask and answer questions.

4 PRONUNCIATION /er/ and /rr/

a **3.16** Listen to the words and sounds. Then listen and repeat.

EX PROPERTY OF THE PROPERTY OF	chair	
40	ear	

b Put the words in the correct row.

there	here	careful	dear	wear		
they're	near	stairs	we're	hear	where	

- d @8.18 Listen and write six sentences or questions.

5 SPEAKING

a Imagine you want to rent a house or an apartment. Interview a partner. Ask for and give more information if you can.

Is it a house or an apartment?
How old is it?
How big is it?

How many | bedrooms bathrooms | are there?

Is there | a study?
a yard or a balcony?
a garage?
heat or central air conditioning?

b Draw a simple plan of one room. Show the plan to your partner and describe the room.

This is the living room. It's big and it's very bright. There are two sofas and an armchair.

6 WRITING

wp.116 Writing Describing your home Write a description of your house or apartment for a website.

Haunted rooms

Were there any ahosts?

No. but there was a strange noise.

G there was / there were V prepositions: place and movement P silent letters

READING & LISTENING

- Do you believe in ghosts? Are there buildings in your town / city that people think are haunted?
- Read a newspaper article about The Roosevelt Hollywood, a hotel in Los Angeles. With a partner, answer questions 1-5.
 - 1 What famous people stayed in The Roosevelt Hollywood?
 - 2 Which movie did the hotel appear in?
 - 3 Who lived in the hotel in the 1950s?
 - 4 What does Montgomery Clift do to guests in room 924?
 - 5 What happened to a partygoer in the hotel's ballroom?
- 38.19 Listen to two guests at the hotel. Did they see a ghost?

d Listen again. Who did these things happen to? Check (✓) the correct column(s).

The man The woman knew about the ghosts in the hotel. woke up during the night. 2 3 heard strange noises. felt frightened when he / she heard the noises. 4 complained to reception. 5 wrote to the hotel after getting home. 6 only stayed at the hotel for one night. 7 doesn't want to stay at the hotel again. 8

- Complete the sentences from the article and the listening. What do the verb phrases mean?
 - 1 She got _____ to open the window.
 - 2 We woke at about 3:30 in the morning.
 - 3 The noises stopped and we went _____ to sleep.
 - 4 We checked _____ of the hotel the same morning.
- Would you like to stay in one of the haunted rooms at the Roosevelt Hollywood? Why (not)?

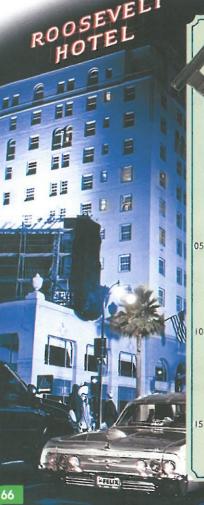
WOULD YOU LIKE TO STAY IN A HAUNTED ROOM?

The US is well-known for having houses and hotels with ghosts, but did you know there was one in downtown Hollywood?

The Hollywood Roosevelt is a famous Los Angeles hotel situated near the Chinese Theater. The hotel was built in 1927 and has 300 rooms. In the past, many famous people stayed at the hotel, including 05 Marilyn Monroe, F. Scott Fitzgerald, and Prince. Montgomery Clift, who starred in From Here to Eternity, also stayed there while filming the movie. More recently, the hotel appeared in the movie Catch Me if You Can and the TV show Curb Your o Enthusiasm.

The Hollywood Roosevelt has the reputation of being haunted, especially rooms 1200 and 924. People say the hotel has several ghosts, including Marilyn Monroe who haunts room 1200. She lived there during happier times in the 1950s. Guests say they see Marilyn in the room's mirror. Montgomery

- Clift appears in room 924. A recent guest in that room reported she got up to open the window and
- 20 felt someone pat her back. Others say Clift plays the trumpet in the room. In addition, other guests claim to see a young girl in a blue dress walk through the hotel's halls.
- When a partygoer went to the hotel's ballroom for an Oscars Viewing Party last March, he reported that a strange thing happened during the event. He posted on Twitter, "Fabulous party, but it was very cold in one part of the ballroom—like ten degrees colder. Weird!" The hotel hosted the first Academy Awards
- 30 in 1929. Some psychics say there is a ghost anxiously waiting in this cold spot. Perhaps he is waiting for his Academy Award!



GRAMMAR there was / there were

- **108.20** Complete the sentences from the listening with was, wasn't, were, or weren't. Then listen and check.
 - 1 There ______ a strange noise outside our door.2 There _____ any more strange noises.

 - 3 We knew that people said there _____ ghosts.
 - 4 There _____ anybody in that room last night.
- b Gp.138 Grammar Bank 8C

3 VOCABULARY prepositions: place and movement

- Read two sentences from the text. Complete with the correct prepositions.
 - 1 Montgomery Clift appears __
 - 2 A young girl in a blue dress walks _____ the hotel's halls.
- b **V** p.162 Vocabulary Bank Prepositions





PRONUNCIATION silent letters

O Silent letters

Some English words have a silent letter, e.g., in ghost /goust/ you don't pronounce the h.

these words.

could cupboard friend quest half hour island listen talk what write know

b Practice saying the words.

5 SPEAKING

Was there a TV?) (No, there wasn't.

© Communication A haunted room A p.106 B p.111 Look at a photo of a haunted hotel room in the UK. Remember what there was in the room.

VIDEO LISTENING



- Watch the documentary A haunted castle about the four ghosts of Portchester Castle. How many of them are frightening?
- b Watch again and complete the sentences.
 - 1 Portchester Castle is more than _ ____ years old.
 - 2 The castle is part of a charity called ____ Heritage.
 - 3 Some workers at the castle leave their jobs because
 - 4 The ghost of a Roman _____ guards the walls of the castle.
 - 5 The ghost of a monk disappears when people
 - 6 The White Lady is the ghost of a woman who died when she tried to save her ___
 - 7 One of the staff members who saw the ghost of the man on a horse screamed and ran
 - 8 One visitor to the castle heard the sound of ____ on the video that he filmed.
- Would you like to visit Portchester Castle and see a ghost?



Go online to watch the video and review the lesson

7&8 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

Cival	On house
CITCIE	a, b, or c.
1	Van Gogh and Gauguin both painters.
	a was b were c is
2	Where Shakespeare born?
	a was b were c is
3	the tickets expensive?
	a Was b Were c Did
4	I a good movie on TV last night.
	a watched b watch c watches
5	They at the right airport.
	a didn't arrived b don't arrived c didn't arrive
6	you see the soccer game last night?
	a Did b Do c Were
7	We to Istanbul three years ago.
	a go b were c went
8	When in Los Angeles?
	a you lived b did you lived c did you live
9	I you at the party last night.
	a didn't saw b didn't see c don't saw
10	What time home?
	a did you get b you did get c you got
11	a big table in the living room.
	a There are b There is c It is
12	How many bedrooms?
	a there are b are there c are they
13	There aren't pictures on the walls.
	a any b some c a
14	
	a There was b There were c There is
15	How many people in the hotel?
	a there were b was there c were there

VOCABULARY

2 _____ an email

4 ______ a taxi 5 _____ on vacation

3 _____ away for the weekend

а	Complete the professions with -er, -or, -ian, o -ist.
	1 act 2 art 3 paint 4 music 5 scient
b	Complete the phrases with go, have, or get. 1 a good time

С	Complete the sentences with back, by, in, out, or to. 1 went with my friends on Saturday night. 2 They went home car. 3 What time did you get the restaurant? 4 was born 1995. 5 After lunch, went to work.
d	Label the pictures. 1 2 3 4 5
е	Write the prepositions. 1 2 3 4 5

PRONUNCIATION

a Practice the words and sounds.

Vowel sounds









ear

chair

phone

saw

Consonant sounds







vase





- b Pp.166-7 Sound Bank Say more words for each sound.
- c What sound do the pink letters have in these words?

 1 hall 2 here 3 lived 4 looked 5 there
- d Underline the stressed syllable.
 - 1 scilen tist 3 yes ter day 5 fire place 2 algo 4 be tween



CAN YOU understand this text?

- Read the article once. Do you have any favorite detectives or detective writers?
- Read the article again. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
 - 1 Gillian Flynn and Lee Child are modern crime writers.
 - 2 Sherlock Holmes only appeared in short stories.
 - 3 Agatha Christie's novels were similar to older crime fiction.
 - 4 She wanted her readers to try to solve the crimes themselves.
 - 5 If you read detective fiction from the 19th and early 20th century, you can learn about how people thought and behaved.
 - 6 Not many people now enjoy Dorothy Sayers's books.

How the modern detective novel was born

Millions of readers, like me, love the books of Gillian Flynn and Ruth Rendell, of Lee Child and Laura Lippman. But most fans of modern crime fiction know very little about the writers who invented the modern detective novel.

Many of the best early detective stories were short stories. Edgar Allan Poe (1809-1849) was probably the author of the first detective story. Arthur Conan Doyle (1859–1930) created perhaps the most famous detective, Sherlock Holmes. Father Brown was also a detective who was nearly as popular as Holmes; he was created by G.K. Chesterton (1874-1936). Father Brown only appeared in short stories, and Sherlock Holmes appeared in over 50 short stories and only four novels, including The Hound of the Baskervilles, where he solves the mystery of an enormous ghost dog.

In 1916, in her book The Mysterious Affair at Styles, Agatha Christie introduced a new type of detective novel, and a new detective, Hercule Poirot. This book was a little bit different because the plot was more important than the characters and the writer asked readers to guess the name of the murderer. Later, in the 1930s and 40s, Dorothy Savers wrote detective novels where the relationships between the characters were sometimes more interesting than the plot.

Reading can give us a fascinating view of the past, and when we read these detective stories and novels, we can also learn something about how people lived and thought in the 19th and 20th centuries. These authors are still very popular. They influence present-day authors, such as J.K. Rowling, and they are probably going to inspire crime fiction for decades to come.

Adapted from the British press

CAN YOU understand these people?

38.25 Watch or listen and answer the questions.











Maura

Asya

- 1 Joelle's family lives in
 - a New York b North Carolina c Canada
- 2 Last weekend, Katie
 - a went out with friends
- c watched a movie
 - b went to a friend's house
- 3 In Maura's bedroom, there's
 - a a TV and a cupboard
 - c a bed and a desk
 - b a wardrobe and a bed
- 4 Yesterday, Asya_
 - a went to bed late c had lunch with her brother
 - b went out with her sister
- 5 Last New Year's Eve, Jake celebrated _
 - a at home
- b at a club c at a restaurant

CAN YOU say this in English?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check (✓) the box if you can do these things.

Can you...?

- 1 say three things about a famous (dead) person from your country
- 2 say five things you did last week, using past time expressions, e.g., last night, yesterday, (three) days ago, etc.
- 3 say where and when you were born
- 4 ask five questions about the past with was / were



#mydinnerlastnight

What did vou have for dinner?

A pizza and some salad.

G countable / uncountable nouns, a / an, some / any V food and drink P the letters ea

VOCABULARY food and drink

Take the quiz with a partner. Add vowels to make the words.

	FOOD & DRINK QUIZ
1	two kinds of Italian food pzz pizza pst
2	two things you can add to coffee mlk sgr
3	a kind of food that vegetarians don't eat mt
4	a drink you buy in a bottle wtr
5	something cold, sweet, and delicious c crm
3	a vegetable you can make French fries from ptt
7	something you use to make an omelet ggs
3	a lot of people are addicted to this sweet food chclt
9	a snack made with two pieces of bread sndwch
)	the three meals we usually have every day brkfst inch dnnr

p.163 Vocabulary Bank Food and drink

What's your favorite ...?

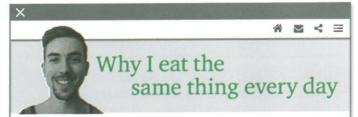
breakfast dessert fruit snack vegetable

Is there any food or drink you don't like?

2 GRAMMAR countable / uncountable nouns, a / an, some / any

- Look at the photo of blogger Nathan Wiebe's lunch. Can you name any of the things in the photo? Do you think it's a healthy lunch?
- Look at the title. Why do you think he eats the same thing every day? Read his blog and check.

- c Read the blog again. Answer the questions with a partner.
 - 1 What do Jobs, Zuckerberg, and Einstein have in common?
 - 2 What are two positive things about Nathan's diet?
 - 3 Does he ever get bored of it? Why (not)?
 - 4 Do you think Nathan's diet is healthy?
 - 5 Is there a meal where you eat the same thing every day? What?
 - 6 Would you like to try wearing the same clothes or eating the same food every day? How long do you think you could do it for?



Steve Jobs, Mark Zuckerberg, and Albert Einstein have one thing in common. They all wear, or wore, more or less the same clothes every day. Why? Because if you wear the same clothes every day, you don't waste time choosing what to wear. I decided to copy them, but with my diet, so I eat the same food every day. This is what I have:

- breakfast: a cup of black coffee
- lunch: some smoked salmon, an avocado, and some cream cheese on a piece of bread
- dinner: some bacon, two eggs, some cheese, and some green vegetables



The good thing about this plan for me is that I spend less time and money buying food, and I also never need to worry if my diet is healthy or not (because I know it is). Now, you're probably thinking, "he's sure to get tired of eating the same food every day." Well, after about a year, I can promise you that I'm not. I change my meals a bit by having different kinds of cheese and using different herbs and spices. I also change the vegetables that I have for dinner.

d Complete the sentences with a, an, or some.

1 Nathan has _____ cup of coffee for breakfast.
2 He has ____ smoked salmon and ___ avocado for lunch.
3 He has ____ cheese and ___ vegetables

for dinner.

e Gp.140 Grammar Bank 9A

3 LISTENING

- a Look at the photos posted with the hashtag #mydinnerlastnight. With a partner, which photo do you think shows...
 - 1 something that the person cooked
 - 2 take-out food that the person ordered
 - 3 something that the person ate in a restaurant
 - 4 something that the person's mother cooked
- b 09.4 Listen to the people talking about their photos and check your answers to a.

Glossary Thanksgiving a US holiday in November

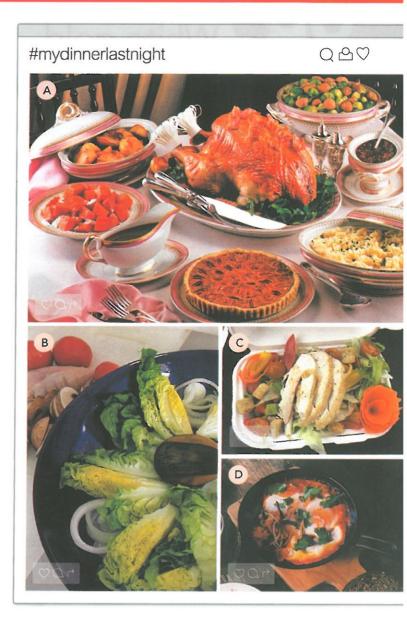
- c Listen again. Who (1–4) talks about...?
 - a good restaurant near their house
 - ways of preparing something
 - a dish with two main ingredients
 - a meal for a special occasion
- d Which of the four dishes or meals would you like to eat? Which wouldn't you like?

4 PRONUNCIATION the letters ea

a How is ea pronounced in these words? Put them in the correct column.

bread breakfast eat healthy ice cream meat peas steak tea





5 SPEAKING

Make a food journal for yesterday. Write what food and drink you had.

Breakfast – a cup of coffee, some cereal

Work in pairs. Tell each other what you had yesterday. Say where you had it and who made it.

I had breakfast at home, and I made it. I had a cup of coffee and some cereal.

c Answer the questions in pairs.

What do you usually have...?

- for a quick lunch when you don't have time to cook
- for dessert at home or in a restaurant
- · when you're hungry between meals
- · for breakfast on the weekend
- · for a special occasion
- · when you order to go



White gold

How much sugar do you eat?

A lot.

G quantifiers: how much / how many, a lot of, etc. V food containers P linking, /ʃ/ and /s



- b 09.7 Listen to five people asking for things in a store. Write the things they want to buy.
- Make phrases with the containers in a and the words below.

cereal coffee cookies jam milk potato chips soda sugar tuna

a box of cereal

GRAMMAR quantifiers

Look at the photos of food and drink. Number the photos 0, 1, or 2(0 = no sugar / salt; 2 = a lot of sugar / salt).



Ask and answer questions about the things in a.



How much sugar is there in dark chocolate?

(I'm not sure. I think there's a lot.

© Communication Sugar and salt p.106 Check your answers to a.

d Complete the sentences with a food or drink from a.

1 There isn't any salt in ___

2 There's a little sugar in _____.

3 There's not much salt in _____ 4 There's a lot of sugar in __

@p.140 Grammar Bank 9B

Work in pairs. A say how much you eat of the first thing in the list below. Give more information if you can. Then ask How about you? B do the same for the second thing, etc.

fish meat potatoes vegetables chocolate fast food eggs pasta olive oil butter cheese

I eat a lot of fish. I eat it maybe three or four times a week. How about you?

PRONUNCIATION /ʃ/ and /s/

29.9 Listen to the words and sounds. Then listen and repeat.

Sir	shower	sugar fish
S	snake	salt chocolates

20 9.10 Put the words in the correct row. Listen and check.

center cereal delicious fresh glass information reception rice salad science shopping special spice sure

- c **19.11** Listen and repeat the conversation. Then practice it with a partner.
 - A Are you sure this is salt? I think it's sugar.
 - B No, I'm sure it's salt. I put some in the
 - A Let's taste the salad. Aargh. It was sugar. I told you.
 - B Sorry!

Fascinating facts about...



At different times in history, both sugar and salt were called "white gold" because they were so expensive and difficult to get. But there are many more interesting facts about sugar and salt...

1	is used to make glass, laundry detergent, an	d
paper.		

- 2_____ really helps the medicine go down!

 It's an important ingredient of many modern medicines.
- Christopher Columbus introduced ³_______
 to the New World in 1493 on his second voyage.
- If you put ⁴ _____ into a vase of flowers, the flowers last longer.
- If you want to check if an egg is fresh, put it in a cup with water and ⁵______. If the egg floats, it isn't very fresh.
- In the UK, there's a club for people who collect the little packets of ⁶_______ you get when you order tea or coffee in a café or restaurant.
- If your dog or cat has fleas, and they are now living in your rugs, put some ⁷______ on the rugs and leave it for 12 hours. This kills all the fleas.
- Only 6% of the ⁸ used in the US is used in food; another 17% is used for de-icing roads in the winter months.
- Sure and 9 _____ are the only two words in the English language that begin with "su" and are pronounced "sh."
- Scientists use ¹⁰______ to make different kinds of plastic, e.g., for food packaging.
- 11 _____ kills some bacteria, and so helps food to last longer, which is why cheese contains a lot.
- If you eat too much ¹² (about one gram per kilogram of weight), you can die.

 This was a method of ritual suicide in ancient China.

Glossary

flea a very small insect that can jump and that lives on and bites animals and people

4 READING

- a Read the magazine article. With a partner, complete the facts with sugar or salt.
- b @9.12 Listen and check.
- c Find these verbs in the article. What do they mean? How do you pronounce them?

introduce float collect order de-ice contain

d How many of the facts did you know? Which ones?

5 SPEAKING

- a Read the questionnaire and complete the questions with *How much* or *How many*.
- b In pairs, interview your partner. Do you think he / she needs to eat less sugar and salt?

How much sugar and salt do YOU have a day?

Sugar

1		spoonfuls	of sugar	do you
	have in your tea	or coffee?		

a two or more b one c none

bottles or cans of soda (or other carbonated drinks) do you drink a day?
 a two or more b one c none

3 _____ fruit or fruit juice do you have

a day?

a a lot b not much c none

cookies do you eat a week?
a a lot b not many c none

Salt

5 How often do you add salt to your food at the table?

 ${f a}$ always ${f b}$ sometimes ${f c}$ never

a a lot **b** not much **c** none

a a lot **b** a little **c** none

8 _____ bags of potato chips do you eat a week?

a a lot b a few c none



Facts and figures

Is the US bigger than China?

No, China is bigger.

G comparative adjectives V high numbers P /ər/, sentence stress

1 VOCABULARY high numbers

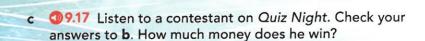
- Read three questions from a radio quiz show. Choose a, b, or c.
 - 1 What is the population of Canada?
 - a 27,000,000
 - b 37,000,000
 - c 57,000,000
 - 2 How far is it from New York City to Los Angeles?
 - a about 1,500 miles
 - b about 2,500 miles
 - c about 3,100 miles
 - 3 How many politicians are there in the British Parliament?
 - a 450
 - b 650
 - c 750
- 39.13 Listen and check. Were you right? How do you say the three answers?
- Vp.148 Vocabulary Bank Days and numbers Do Part 4.
- d 09.15 Listen and write the ten numbers you hear.
 - 1 199
- e Answer the questions with a partner.
 - 1 What's the population of your town or city?
 - 2 What's the population of your country?
 - 3 How far is it from your town or city to ...? a New York
 - b London
 - 4 How many politicians are there in your country's government?

LISTENING

- 10 9.16 Listen to the introduction to a show called Quiz Night. Answer the questions.
 - 1 How long do the contestants have to say if the sentences are true or false?
 - 2 How much do they win if they get ...?
 - a the first answer right
 - b the second answer right
 - c the third answer right
 - d all eight answers right
 - 3 If they get an answer wrong, how much do they lose?
 - 4 What can a contestant do if they are not sure of the answer?
- b In pairs, look at sentences 1–8 from Quiz Night. Write T (true) or F (false).

QUIZ NIGHT

- A whale can make a louder noise than a lion. 1
- World War I was shorter than World War II. 2
- The American movie industry is bigger than the Indian 3 movie industry.
- In July, Seattle is hotter than Sydney. 4
- Silver is heavier than gold. 5
- The mountain K2 is more difficult to climb than Mount 6 Everest.
- Driving in Italy is more dangerous than driving in the US. 7
- It's better to exercise in the morning than in the afternoon. 8



Listen again for why the answers are true or false. Write down all the important numbers in each answer.

3 GRAMMAR comparative adjectives

a Look at the adjectives in the *Quiz Night* sentences. In pairs, answer the questions.

Using adjectives to compare two things:

- 1 What two letters do you put at the end of one-syllable adjectives, e.g., loud?
- 2 Why is big different?
- 3 What happens when an adjective ends in consonant + y, e.g., heavy?
- 4 What word do you put in front of long adjectives, e.g., dangerous?
- 5 What's the comparative form of good?
- 6 What's the missing word?
 China is bigger _____ Japan
- b Gp.140 Grammar Bank 9C

4 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING

/ər/, sentence stress

- a **09.19** Listen to the sentence. How is -er pronounced at the end of a comparative adjective? How is than pronounced?

 A whale can make a louder noise than a lion.
- b <u>09.20</u> Listen and write six comparative sentences.
- c Listen again and <u>copy</u> the <u>rhy</u>thm. Are the sentences true or false?
- d GCommunication Quiz Night A p.107 B p.112 Play Quiz Night.

5 READING

- a Read the first part of the article about trivia night. Do you have something similar in your country?
- b Now read the Tips for how to win and complete them with A-G.
 - A Choose your team carefully.
 - B Don't be a sore loser.
 - C Don't cheat!
 - D Enjoy yourself!
 - E Keep your eyes open.
 - F Know about current affairs.
 - G Learn the big names.
- c Look at these words from the article to do with quizzes. What do they mean? How do you pronounce them?
 - a team an M.C. an expert to cheat to memorize to be a sore loser to win

- d Answer the questions with a partner.
 - 1 Do you play any games or take quizzes with general knowledge questions, e.g., *Trivial Pursuit*?
 - 2 Are you a good or sore loser? Do you ever cheat?
 - 3 What TV quiz shows are popular in your country? Do you watch any of them? Why (not)?
 - 4 Do you know anyone who loves a particular quiz show? Which one? Why?
 - 5 Would you like to be a contestant on a quiz show? Which one?



TRIVIA NIGHT QUIZ

Round 1 (Culture)

1	Madonna	1
2	?	X
3	the 1812 Overture	X
4	Denzel Washington	1
5	Guillermo del Toro	1
6	Prince	1
7	??	X
8	Amy Adams	1

Round 2 (Sports)

1	Derek Jeter	1
2	Chloe Kim	X
3	?	X
4	Usain Bolt	1
5	The Stanley Cup	1
6	the Denver Broncos	1
7	4 minutes	1
8	??	X

Round 3

1	
2	No. of the second
3	1000 1000
4	
5	4 32 32 1
6	
7	
8	

in the UK in the 1970s and have become very popular in the US in the last ten years. Friends form teams, usually of about five or six people, and they decide on a name for their team. The person who asks the questions is called the "M.C." (or the master of ceremonies), and the teams write their answers of a piece of paper. You can't use your phone to look for the answers! In some trivia night competitions, teams pay to be part of the event – from about \$5 to \$

A trivia quiz is a general knowledge quiz held in a bar or a restaurant. They started

pay to be part of the event – from about \$5 to \$25 person – and the winning team gets the money. But a lot of trivia nights are free because restaurants and bars want people to come on nights that aren't usually busy, like Mondays and Tuesdays.

Tips for how to win

- 1 D That's really what it's all about. And don't take it too seriously.
- 2 Make sure you have friends who are experts at different subjects.
- 3 Cell phones, reference books, newspapers, etc., are not permitted.
- 4 Find out about events in the news, especially politics.
- Memorize the winners of recent and past sporting events, Academy Awards, Grammys, reality TV shows, political elections, etc., as well as the latest singles and album charts.
- 6 Always look out for new facts, wherever you are.
- 7 If you don't win, remember, there is always next time.



Practical English At a restaurant

ordering a meal V understanding a menu

AN INVITATION TO DINNER



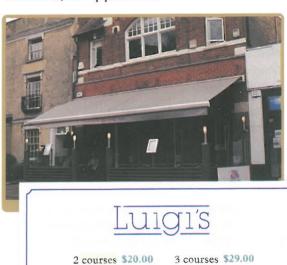
- 1 Watch or listen. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
 - 1 Jenny and Rob worked last night.
 - 2 Jenny wants to read Rob's article.
 - 3 It's Eddie's birthday today.
 - 4 Rob and Daniel invite Jenny to dinner.
 - 5 Jenny says yes to Rob.
- b Watch or listen again. Say why the F sentences
- c @9.22 Read the information box. Listen and repeat B's phrases.

Responding to what somebody says

- 1 A It's my birthday today.
 - B Happy Birthday!
- 2 A We won the game!
 - **B** Congratulations!
- 3 A I have my driving test tomorrow.
 - B Good luck!
- 4 A I got all my English homework right.
 - B Good job!
- 5 A I didn't get the job.
 - B Better luck next time.
- d @9.23 Listen and respond with phrases from the
 - 1)) I got two goals this afternoon. (Good job!

2 VOCABULARY understanding a menu

Complete the menu with Main courses, Desserts, or Appetizers.



Onion soup o o Mozzarella and tomato salad o o

> Grilled chicken breast with vegetables

Mushroom ravioli Seafood risotto

Homemade vanilla ice cream with hot chocolate sauce o o

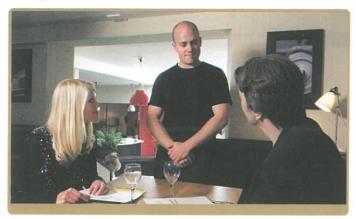
Fresh fruit salad oo

Tiramisu o

Vegetarian. Givren-free If you have any other dietary requirement please let us know and we will try our best to accommodate your needs Tables of 8 or more are subject to a discretionary service charge of 18%.

- b @9.24 What do the highlighted words mean? How do you pronounce them? Listen and check.
- Cover the menu. In pairs, try to remember what's on it.

3 ORDERING A MEAL



- a @9.25 Watch or listen to Jenny and Daniel having dinner. Check the things they order on the menu.
- **b** Watch or listen again. Complete the **You hear** phrases.

You hear	You say
Good evening. Do you have a ¹ ?	Yes, a table for two. My name's Daniel O'Connor.
Come this ² , please.	-
Are you ready to ³ ?	
What would you 4to drink?	Just water for me. A bottle of mineral water, please.
5 or sparkling?	Is sparkling OK? Yes, sparkling.
Thank you, sir.	Thank you.

- d In threes, practice the conversation.
- e Role-play the conversation in groups of three. Then change roles.

A you are the waiter.

B and C go to Luigi's.

A begin Good evening. Do you have a reservation?

4 D THE END OF THE MEAL

- 3 9.27 Watch or listen and answer the questions.
 - 1 How does Jenny usually celebrate her birthday?
 - 2 Do they order dessert or coffee?
 - 3 What does Daniel say to Jenny after the meal?
 - 4 How does Jenny answer?
 - 5 Does Barbara give Jenny good news or bad news?
 - 6 Where does Jenny want to go after the meal?
- b Look at the Social English phrases. Who says them: Jenny, Daniel, the waiter, or Barbara?



Social English

Nothing special.

Would you like a dessert?

Not for me, thanks.

A decaf espresso.

The same for me, please.

Go ahead.

Good news?

Could I have the bill, please?



American and British English

check = American English bill = British English

- d Complete conversations A–G with **Social English** phrases 1–8. Practice with a partner.

Α		Yes! I have a new job!
B ch	Two soups, one icken, and one fish.	Just coffee.
С	Excuse me.	Yes, of course, sir.
D	What do you usually do on New Year's Eve?	We don't really celebrate it.
E	What coffee would you like?	
F	I'd like the ravioli.	I love pasta!
G	So, can I ask him?	

CAN YOU...?

- use common phrases, e.g., Good luck, Congratulations, etc.
- understand a menu
- order a meal

The most dangerous place...

What's the oldest building in your town?

> I'm not sure. Probably the cathedral.

G superlative adjectives V places and buildings P consonant groups

1 VOCABULARY places and buildings

Complete these famous tourist sights in the US and the UK with a word from the list.

0.1						
Brio	dge	Castle	Gallery	Park	Square	Street
1 1	The E	Brooklyn		cor	nects Ma	nhattan and Brooklyn.
2 [Dowi	ning	is	where	the Britis	sh prime minister lives.
3 V	Nind	sor	is	the roy	al family	s weekend home and the
li	arge	st inhabi	ted castle	in the	world.	
4 (Cent	ral	is a	green	space in	the middle of New York.
5 1	The N	National		_ is Lo	ondon's m	ost famous art museum.
6 T	Time:	s	is the	ecente	er of New	York's theater district.

- 10.1 Listen and check.
- **Op.164 Vocabulary Bank** Places and buildings
- **GRAMMAR** superlative adjectives
- Look at the photos. What countries do you think they are in?
- b With a partner, complete 1-6 with a phrase from the list.

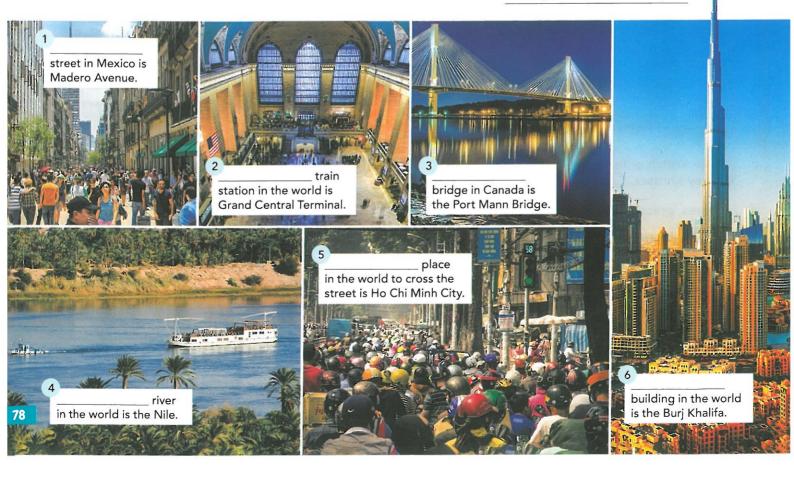
The biggest The busiest The longest The most dangerous The tallest The widest

- 10.3 Listen and check your answers to a and b.
- d Complete the chart with the correct form.

Adjective	Comparative	Superlative
wide	wider	the widest
	taller	the tallest
long		the longest
big	bigger	
	busier	the busiest
dangerous	more dangerous	

- How are superlative adjectives different in form from comparative adjectives?
- @p.142 Grammar Bank 10A
- 10.5 Listen and write six superlative
- In groups, ask and answer the questions in g. Choose from the cities below.

Atlanta Brussels La Paz Las Vegas New York Tokyo



3 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING consonant groups

Consonant groups

Two or three consonants together can be difficult to pronounce, e.g., fastest, most dangerous.

a 10.6 Listen and repeat.

beautiful the most beautiful the most beautiful square What's the most beautiful square?

- b 10.7 Now listen and repeat the same pattern with 1-4.
 - 1 old (building)
 - 2 interesting (museum)
 - 3 good (shopping mall)
 - 4 nice (place)
- Communication I'm a tourist. Help!
 A p.107 B p.112 Role-play being a tourist.

4 READING

a Read the article. Which suggestion do you think is the most useful?

- **b** Read the article again. Complete the paragraphs with sentences A–E.
 - A All you need to do is smile and wave to them.
 - B The only thing that saved me was a student who shouted, "Don't stop, keep walking!"
 - C So, if you really can't cross the road, you can get a taxi to take you to the other side.
 - D When I heard this I thought, "Maybe it's better to just stay in my hotel and read!"
 - E The second time I chose a woman selling vegetables with baskets full of sweet potatoes, and again I survived.
- c Cover the article. Can you remember seven words for vehicles?
- d Work in groups and answer the questions.
 - 1 What's the most popular form of transportation in your town or city?
 - 2 In what part of town and at what time of day is the traffic the worst?
 - 3 How do you usually get around?
 - 4 Do cars always stop at crosswalks?
 - 5 Are there any streets that are really difficult to cross?
 - 6 Is there any town or city you visited where you had problems crossing the street, or where you found the traffic really frightening?

5 WRITING

Imagine you want to advertise your town or city for tourists. Write an advertisement using superlative adjectives. Add photos if you can.

Come to Eagle Rock! It isn't the cleanest or the most beautiful part of Los Angeles, but it has the nicest people and the best tacos...

The most dangerous place in the world to cross the street

If you want to cross the street in most countries, you wait for a gap in the traffic, and then you cross. But not in Ho Chi Minh City, where there's never a gap in the traffic. Apart from the cars, trucks, bikes, and buses, there are millions of motorcycles and scooters, which are the most popular form of transportation in Vietnam. Crossing the road is an adventure, and many tourists find it impossible. So, what can you do?

Keep walking. The receptionist at my hotel told me, "When it feels right, walk into the road. The most important thing to remember is to keep walking. Don't stop. Don't run. Don't look left or right. And don't walk in front of a bus, because they can't stop easily."

Cross with a local person. They know what they're doing, and this is the safest way for beginners. I looked for a middle-aged local man and I crossed the road with him. I made sure that he was between me and the traffic, and I prayed as I walked next to him.

And I got to the other side!

Cross in a group. I met some students who were happy to walk across the street with me. But this time, when I saw a car coming straight at me, I stopped and put up my arm (like a traffic police officer). This was a big mistake.

Find a police officer. There are really nice police officers in green uniforms, and their job is to help frightened tourists cross the road.

Take a taxi. For one or two dollars, they take you anywhere you want to go.





10 B Five continents in a day

Where are you going to stay?

We're going to rent an apartment.

G be going to (plans), future time expressions **V** city vacations **P** sentence stress

1 GRAMMAR be going to (plans)

Look at the map. Where are the cities? Say the country and continent for each city.

(Caracas is in Venezuela, South America.

- b 10.8 Gunnar Garfors and Adrian Butterworth are planning to break a world record by visiting five continents in one day. Listen and draw their route on the map.
- Listen again and fill in the blanks with a verb from the list.

arrive celebrate fly get go out start

- d Look at the highlighted sentence in the interview. Then answer the questions.
 - 1 What form is the verb after going to?
 - 2 Do we use going to to talk about the past, the present, or the future?
- @p.142 Grammar Bank 10B
- f 10.10 Do you think Gunnar and Adrian succeeded? Listen to Gunnar and find out.
- What do you think about Gunnar and Adrian's trip? Do you think it was a) a waste of money, b) bad for the environment, or c) an exciting thing to do?





2 PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING

sentence stress

- 10.11 Listen and repeat the conversations. Copy the rhythm.
 - 1 A What are you going to do this summer?
 - B I'm going to go to Thailand.
 - 2 A Are you going to go out on Friday night?
 - B Yes, I'm going to see a movie.
- b @Communication What are you going to do? A p.107 B p.112 Interview a partner about his / her plans.

LISTENING

- Imagine you are planning a vacation. What do you think about first? Number the following 1-4.
 - Where am I going to go?
 - What am I going to do?
 - Who am I going to go with?
 - What previous vacations did I really enjoy?



- b **10.12** Listen to Justin Francis from Responsible Travel. Does he agree with your order?
- c Listen again and make notes to answer the questions.
 - 1 What examples does Justin give if you want to...?

 - · go somewhere different
 - go on an adventure
 - · learn a new skill
 - 2 If you are going to go on vacation with other people, what do you need to make sure of?
 - 3 What does he recommend if you want to meet new people on
 - 4 What three examples does he give of things that can make you happy on vacation?
 - 5 What are you ready to start thinking about after following steps
- d Answer the questions.
 - What do you think of Justin's ideas? What do you usually want to do on vacation?
 - Can you remember a vacation that made you very happy? Why was it special?

4 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING city vacations

a Complete the vacation phrases with a verb from the list.

book rent	buy stay	eat visit	go	have	meet
1		_ a fl	ight,	a train,	a room
2		by ·	train	/bus/	plane
3				n apart	50
4		in a	hote	el / hos	tel
5		_ out	(in lo	ocal res	taurants)
6		_ mu	seum	is and a	art galleries
7		_ sou	venir	S	3 - 8
8		_ a g	ood t	ime	
9		_ nev	v pec	ple	

- b Talk to a partner. What do you like doing on vacation? Try to find some things you have in common.
- With your partner, plan a dream trip. You are going to visit three cities on the same continent. Your vacation can be a maximum of ten days. Answer the questions.

What cities are you going to visit? How long are you going to stay in each city? How are you going to get there? Where are you going to stay? What are you going do in each place?



Making suggestions

Let's (go to...). Why don't we (go to...)? That's a good idea.

d Change partners. Tell each other about your vacation plans.

We're going to go to South America – to Buenos Aires, Rio, and Montevideo. We're going to stay in hostels because we don't have much money...

Do you prefer your new partner's plans? Would you like to change partners and go with him / her?

5 WRITING

Wp.117 Writing A formal email Make a reservation at a bed and breakfast.





Am I going to fall in love?

Yes, and you're going to be very happy.

G be going to (predictions) V verb phrases P word stress

1 VOCABULARY verb phrases

- Do people in your country go to fortune-tellers, or use fortune-telling sites on the internet? Why do you think they do this? Do you believe in fortune-telling?
- b What pictures can you see on the fortune-teller's cards? Match the cards and verb phrases.
 - become famous
 - get a new job
 - get married
 - meet somebody new
 - fall in love
- get a lot of money
- have a surprise
- A be lucky
- travel
- move to a new house



2 PRONUNCIATION word stress

 ○ Word stress in two-syllable words Approximately 80% of two-syllable words are stressed on the first syllable, e.g., argue.

a Look at the words from a story. Which four are stressed on the second syllable?

ar gue be lieve boy friend falmous for tune fulture ildea lulcky mariried monley problem question surprise to day travel worry

10.13 Listen and check. Practice saying the words.

READING & LISTENING

- Look at the photos and the title of the story. What do you think it's going to be about?
- b 10.14 Read and listen to Part 1 of the story. In pairs, answer the questions.
 - 1 Who does Jane want to see?
 - 2 Who is going to tell her about her future? Why?
 - 3 Why couldn't she see very well?
- c 10.15 Listen to Part 2. With a partner, complete the information.
 - 1 Jane has a problem with her _____.
 - 2 She chooses ____ cards.
 - 3 Her first card means she's going to be __
 - 4 Jane asks the fortune-teller if she's going to _____ with her boyfriend.
- d 10.16 Read and listen to Part 3. In pairs, answer the questions.
 - 1 What's the second card? What does it mean?
 - 2 Why is this a problem for Jane?
 - 3 What's her third card? What does it mean?
 - 4 Who's Jim? Where did Jane meet him?
 - 5 What do you think the fourth card is going to be?
- e 10.17 Listen to Part 4. With a partner, complete the information.
 - 1 Her fourth card means she is going to _ her boyfriend and go to _____ with Jim.
 - 2 Very soon they are going to _____.
 - 3 Jane asks if she is going to be _____ and the fortune-teller says _____
 - 4 She pays the fortune-teller £_____.

IT'S WRITTEN IN THE CARDS



Part 1

"Come in," said a voice. Jane Ross opened the door and went into a small room. There was a man sitting behind a table.

"Good afternoon," said Jane. "I want to see Madame Yolanda, the fortune-teller."

"Madame Yolanda is not here today," said the man. "But don't worry. I'm going to tell you about your future. What questions do you want to ask?" Jane looked at the fortune-teller. She couldn't see him very well because the room was very dark.



Part 3

He turned over the second card.

"Mm, a house. A new house. You're going to move, very soon, to another country."

"But my boyfriend works here. He can't move to another country."

"Let's look at the next card," said the fortune-teller. He turned over the third card.

"A heart. You're going to fall in love."

"Who with?" asked Jane.

"Let me concentrate. I can see a tall, dark man. He's very attractive."

"Oh, that's Jim," said Jane.

"Who's Jim? Your boyfriend?"

"No. Jim is a man I met at a party last month. He's an actor, from New York. He says he's in love with me. It was his idea for me to come to Madame Yolanda."

"Well, the card says that you're going to fall in love with him."

"Are you sure?" asked Jane. "But what about my boyfriend?"

"Let's look at the fourth card," said the fortune-teller.

4 VIDEO LISTENING

- a 10.18 Watch or listen to Parts 1–4 of It's written in the cards again. What do you think is going to happen?
- b 10.19 Now watch or listen to Part 5 of the story. In pairs, answer the questions.
 - 1 Who was the fortune-teller?
 - 2 Why did he pay Madame Yolanda £100?
 - 3 What's the fifth card? What does Madame Yolanda think is going to happen?

5 GRAMMAR be going to (predictions)

- a Look at the two sentences. Which one is a plan? Which one is a prediction?
 - 1 She's going to be very lucky.
 - 2 She's going to go on vacation next week.
- b Gp.142 Grammar Bank 10C



c Write four predictions, about the weather, sports, your town / country, and you. Use I think... going to...

I think it's going to snow tonight.

d Compare your predictions with a partner. Do you agree?

6 SPEAKING

Role-play fortune-telling.

- A Look at the ten cards in 1. Secretly, number the cards in a different order (1–10).
- B Choose five numbers from 1-10.
- A Predict B's future using those cards.
- B Ask for more information. Then change roles.
- A I'm going to tell you about your future. Your first card is a star. You're going to become famous. You're going to be on TV.
 - (B Great! What TV show?



Go online to watch the video and review the lesson

Review and Check

GRAMMAR

1				
Circ	lea,	b.	or	C
(2		~,	•	٠.

- 1 There's ____ milk in the refrigerator.
 - a some bany ca
- 2 We don't need ____ bread.
 - ano bany ca
- 3 How ____ fruit do you eat a day?
 - a much b many c a lot
- 4 I drink ____ coffee.
 - a much balot calot of
- 5 A How much salt do you eat? B __
 - a A little b A few c Much
- 6 A Is there any sugar? B No, sorry, __
 - a there isn't none
 - b there isn't any
 - c there isn't some
- 7 Tea is ____ coffee in this café.
 - a cheaper that
 - b more cheap than
 - c cheaper than
- 8 This exercise is ____ than the last one.
 - a more easy b easier c easyer
- 9 My English is ____ than my brother's.
 - a gooder b better c more good
- 10 This is ____ size that we have.
 - a the biggest
 - b the most big
 - c the bigger
- 11 It's ____ restaurant in the city.
 - a the baddest b the worst
 - c the worse
- 12 What's ____ park in your town?
 - a the most beautiful b most beautiful
 - c the more beautiful
- 13 ____ to buy my ticket this afternoon.
 - algo blgoing cl'm going
- 14 ____ to get married?
 - a Do they going b They are going
 - c Are they going
- 15 I think ____ tomorrow.
 - a it snows b it's snowing
 - c it's going to snow

VOCABULARY

- a Circle the word that is different.
 - 1 breakfast dessert dinner lunch
 - 2 mushrooms onions peas strawberries
 - 3 milk water orange juice sugar
 - 4 French fries tomatoes potatoes potato chips
 - 5 cake chicken fruit salad ice cream

b Match the food to the containers.

chocolates	fruit juice	honey	rice	tomatoes
1 a box of			4 a	a package o
2 a can of _			5 a	carton of _
3 a iar of				

- c Circle the correct word or phrase.
 - 1 It's a hundred twenties / a hundred and twenty miles from here.
 - 2 The population is about three million / millions.
 - 3 That new department shop / department store is great.
 - 4 Let's have a coffee at one of those cafés in the square / bridge.
 - 5 Where is the train center / station?
- d Complete the phrases with these verbs.

become	book	fall	get	go	have	meet	rent	stay	visit
1	in	a hot	el		6		_ fligh	ts	
2	by bus			7	somebody ne		new		
3	famous				8		_ a mu	seum	
4	married		9 a great r		eat me	al			
5	in	love			10		_ an a	oartme	ent

PRONUNCIATION

Practice the words and sounds.

Vowel sounds











tourist

Consonant sounds









right



monkey



television

b Pp.166-7 Sound Bank Say more words for each sound.

- What sound do the pink letters have in these words?
 - 1 bread 2 oil 3 town 4 sugar 5 wrote
- d Underline the stressed syllable.
 - 1 cholcolate
- 3 su per mar ket
- 5 dan ger ous

- 2 des sert
- 4 in ter est ing



CAN YOU understand this text?

- Read the article once. Match the hotels and photos. Which one would you like to stay in?
- Read the article again. Match the hotels (A-C) to the sentences.

At which hotel can you...?

- 1 get a great view of the ocean
- 2 sleep a long way from other people
- 3 get married
- 4 spend time with working animals
- 5 do hard physical exercise
- 6 have a massage or facial
- 7 take a tour of geographical features
- 8 have a business meeting

CAN YOU understand these people?

10.21 Watch or listen and answer the questions.









Kevin



Graziella

Kara

James

- 1 Graziella eats a lot of
 - b chocolate a fruit c salt
- 2 Kara is good at cooking food from ____ country.
- a her b her parents' c her husband's
- 3 James loves Paris because _
 - a it has tall towers
 - b it's beautiful at night
 - c it has beautiful flowers
- 4 When Kevin goes to Thailand he's going to visit ___ different places.
 - a two
- b three
- c four
- 5 Mica thinks that the biggest difference between New York and the UK is _
 - a the weather b the people c the food

CAN YOU say this in English?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check () the box if you can do these things.

Can you...?

- 1 say what you usually have for breakfast
- 2 compare your country with the US in three ways
- 3 say what the best and worst things are about the town or city where you live
- 4 ask somebody what he / she is going to do...
 - tonight tomorrow next weekend



- A For people who love nature, **Verana** in Puerto Vallarta in Mexico is an amazing spa hotel with beautiful views on all sides. It has ten questhouses, and four new buildings with balconies above the trees, from where you can see the beautiful Bay of Banderas. The spa has an infinity pool and offers a variety of different spa treatments, as well as yoga classes. You can go whale-watching, go fishing for tuna, and explore the area on foot. This is the perfect place for your wedding, your honeymoon, or both. But remember, you can only get there by boat!
- B Would you like to sleep in a mine? Then book the underground suite in Sala Silvermine in Sweden, and enjoy the world's deepest bedroom, 508 feet below the surface. Although the corridors are cold and dark, your rooms are warm (64°F), and the light comes from candles in beautiful silver candlesticks. You can also explore the caves and magical lakes with a guide. There are no other guests, so it's not for nervous people. Cell phones don't work, but you have a radio for emergencies. In the morning, they bring breakfast down to you. Perfect for romantic couples who like a little bit of adventure.
- You don't need to travel to the Arctic Circle to spend time with Siberian huskies. At the **Husky Lodge** in the mountains of Switzerland, dog-lovers can sleep in cabins, heated with wood fires, next to the dogs' kennels. During the day, you can join in with their training runs. They pull sledges in the winter and bikes and carts in the summer. In the evening, there's an excellent restaurant. And if you have to work, there are three rooms for small conferences and seminars. If you can't afford the cabins, there's a campsite, too though maybe only in summer!





Culture shock

They drive fast. How do but very well. they drive?

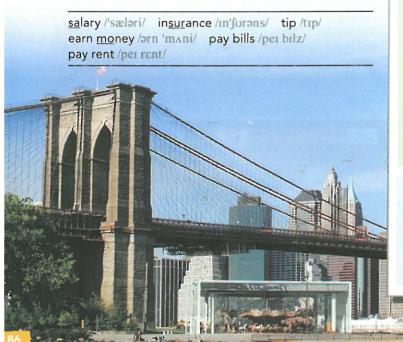
G adverbs (manner and modifiers) V common adverbs P connected speech

READING

- Think of a time when you went to another country or another city / region in your country for the first time. Was there anything that surprised you?
- b Read some posts on a forum. Which topic don't they mention?

clothes exercise food health money transportation

- Read the posts again. Match sentences 1-9 to the people who said them, L (Lena), R (Rahim), N (Natasha), T (Tara), or J (Julie).
 - People can earn good salaries without working hard.
 - Some people don't dress warmly in the winter.
 - The president isn't paid very well.
 - People don't always speak politely to older people.
 - People have really big serving sizes when they eat out.
 - 6 Some hospitals are incredibly luxurious.
 - 7 You can travel safely on public transportation.
 - Doctors speak very openly to their patients.
 - You pay people well to do their job, and then you give them more money.
- Look again at sentences 1-9 about the US. Are they true in your country? If not, say why.
- Learn these words and phrases related to money. What do they mean? How do you pronounce them?



THINGS I DIDN'T KNOW UNTIL I GOT HERE

What was a surprise for you when you came to live in the US?

LENA FROM UKRAINE

When I eat out with my husband or friends, we usually share because serving sizes are huge and we don't want all that food. But you can take home everything you don't eat, and I like that.

In the winter, you often see people on the street or the subway who are wearing just a T-shirt when it's really cold outside.

RAHIM FROM PAKISTAN

When people speak to their boss (and to their teachers), they call them by their first name. They do the same to old people, too, even when they don't know them well. It doesn't seem polite to me.

NATASHA FROM BELARUS

The American president's salary is about the same as a doctor's. He isn't the richest person in the country. That surprised me! Some hospitals are like smart hotels - but a lot of people can't go there because they don't have medical insurance. Also, doctors don't always explain everything to their patients in my country. Here, they tell you everything.

TARA FROM INDIA

I couldn't believe the tipping system, for example, in places like a hair salon. You cut my hair and I pay you - a lot! Why do I need to give you a tip too?

Public transportation can be dangerous in India. But I was on the subway here in New York, going home late at night, when a group of people got on. They were very loud and we were frightened. But at the next stop, two police officers got on. The people stopped shouting when they saw the police. I felt really safe.

JULIE FROM CANADA

My husband is from Ecuador, and when he first arrived, he was really surprised by his salary. As a chef, he could earn enough money to pay bills, buy food, pay rent, have a good social life, and buy luxuries like our Xbox. In Quito, he worked 15 hours a day, and more on the weekend, and he earned half the money.

2 GRAMMAR adverbs

- a Look at the highlighted phrases with adverbs in sentences 1–9 in 1c. Choose a or b to complete the rules.
 - 1 Regular adverbs

An adverb is **a** adjective + -lv.

b adjective + -lly.

2 Use of adverbs

Adverbs describe a nouns.

b verbs, adjectives, or other adverbs.

3 Position of adverbs

Adverbs go a before a verb or verb phrase.

b after a verb or verb phrase.

Adverbs go **a before** another adverb or adjective.

b after another adverb or adjective.

b **G**p.144 Grammar Bank 11A

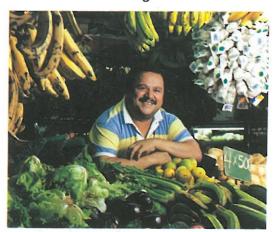
- c 11.3 Listen and say what's happening. Use an adverb.
 - 1 They're speaking quietly.

3 LISTENING & PRONUNCIATION connected speech



Jack Horton lives in San José in Costa Rica, where he teaches computer science at a high school.

a 11.4 Listen to Jack talking about what surprised him when he arrived in Costa Rica. In general, is he positive, negative, or neutral about living there?



- b 11.5 You're going to hear seven three- and four-word phrases that Jack says, linking the words. Listen and write the phrases.
 - 1 how incredibly friendly

c Listen to the whole interview again. Then with a partner, complete the sentences.

771		1		
Ine	peop	101	the	TICOS
1110	PCOP			LICOS

1	They are much than people in his home country.
	Pura vida really means "things"
3	They are often for appointments because they use "tico time."
T	he weather
4	The temperature is about all year round.
5	In September and October, it really
	for two hours a day.
TI	ne country
6	The scenery is even than he expected.
7	He was the first time a volcano erupted.
T	ne food
8	The only things you can buy cheaply are,
	, and
9	He really likes the
Sa	an José

d Would you like to go to Costa Rica for a vacation? Would you like to live there?

4 VOCABULARY & SPEAKING

common adverbs

10 He thinks it's probably __

11 The roads are

Answer the questions in small groups. If the answer is yes, give more details. If no, say how they do these things. How about you?

Do you think people in your country...?

drive dangerously
speak foreign languages fluently
treat tourists well
talk loudly
work hard
take life seriously
treat people in stores and restaurants politely
dress well

wait patiently in lines behave calmly in a crisis

In Spain, I think that some young men drive dangerously.
They drive very fast and they don't obey traffic rules. But I never drive dangerously. I drive very slowly and carefully.

5 WRITING

Write three forum posts for people visiting your country, about habits that might surprise them. Use at least one adverb of manner or a modifier in each post.

We have our meals really late. We often have lunch at 2:30 and dinner at 10:00.



11 B Experiences or things?

Would you like to learn a new language?

Yes, I want to learn Chinese.

MY DREAMS

G verb + infinitive V verbs that take the infinitive P weak to, sentence stress

READING & SPEAKING

Read the dictionary definition of a bucket list. Do you have a similar phrase in your language?

bucket list NAmE /'bakət list/(49); BrE /'bakit list/ noun a list of things that you want to do before you die Traveling to India is number one on my bucket list.

- b Read the **About me** section of Stef's blog. What does she say about...?
 - 1 the Canary Islands and Argentina She worked there when she was a student.
 - 2 Australia and New Zealand
 - 3 an IT company
 - 4 Istanbul, Indonesia, Chile, Prague
 - 5 having experiences
 - 6 three months ago

- Read the My dreams section. Check (✓) the five things you would most like to do. Compare with a partner and say why.
- d Cover My dreams. Remember the missing verbs.

	a list
2	on vacation
3	a horse
1	a language
5	for a walk
5	a dream come true
7	a recipe
2	in a taxi

What do you think of Stef's lifestyle? Do you agree that experiences are more important than things?

About me

Hi! I'm Stef, a traveler from Germany with a passion for travel, food, and photography.

During my studies, I worked in the Canary Islands and in Argentina and I studied for two semesters in the UK. After I finished, I decided that I didn't want to work for the rest of my life. I was 21 and couldn't imagine sitting in an office for the next 40 years or more. So, I decided to go to Australia on os a working vacation visa. First, I worked for six months in Germany because I needed to save some money. I went to Sydney at the end of 2011. I spent Christmas on St. Kilda Beach in Melbourne, I worked in a restaurant, and then I traveled all over Australia and New Zealand.

> o company – an office job. I was happy to have a routine again, but I spent all my vacations traveling - to Thailand, Istanbul, Portugal, Indonesia, Chile, Belize, and Morocco. Some months passed, but finally I realized what I wanted to do with my life, at least for now. Having experiences is 15 very important to me – more important than working in an office all week to pay for an apartment that I hardly ever spend time in, and to buy things I don't really need. Three months ago, I left my job. I decided to work in different 20 jobs, sometimes here, sometimes abroad, sometimes as a volunteer,

> > sometimes for money. I have a lot of dreams and I want to make them come true.

After coming back, I got a job as a project assistant in an IT

My dreams

At the beginning of every year, I make a "bucket list" of 100 things I would like to do. These are some of them. You can probably do them in your country - you don't need to travel.

- Put a secret in a balloon and let it fly away.
- Go on vacation with my best friend.
- Take a photo every day for a year.
- Learn to windsurf.
- Ride a horse on the beach.
- Learn to play the guitar.
 - Learn a new language.
- Read one book every week.
- Run through a field of flowers.
- Learn to dive and take underwater photos.
 - Go for a walk in the summer rain.
 - Go to a festival or an outdoor concert.
 - Explore my hometown.
 - Do karaoke.
- Make my best friend's dream come true.
 - Do something that scares me.
 - Make all the recipes in a cookbook.
 - Get in a taxi and shout "follow that car."



2 GRAMMAR verb + infinitive

a Match the phrases to make sentences from Stef's blog. Which word is missing?

	_
I decided	save some mone
needed	play the guitar.
Learn	go to Australia.

b @p.144 Grammar Bank 11B

3 PRONUNCIATION weak to, sentence stress

- a 11.7 Listen and write six sentences. Then listen and repeat them. How do you pronounce to?
- b 11.8 Listen and repeat the conversation. Copy the rhythm. Practice it with a partner.
 - A Would you like to go to Australia?
 - B No, i wouldn't.
 - A Why not?
 - B Because I don't like snakes or insects.
- c Work with a partner. Choose five more things from Stef's bucket list (not the five your partner checked) in 1c. Ask your partner questions using Would you like to...?

Would you like to learn to windsurf?

(Yes, I would. / No, I wouldn't.



4 VOCABULARY verbs that take the infinitive

a Look at ten verbs that take the infinitive. Which one is irregular?

decid	de	forget	hope	learn	need	plan	promise	remember
try	war	nt						

b Complete the sentences with a verb from a in the past tense.

1	He <u>wanted</u> to know how much the salary was.
2	It was my mom's birthday yesterday – luckily I
	to buy her a present!
3	They looked at some destinations on the internet, and finally
	they to go to Phucket.
4	Oh no! I to lock the door!
5	I hard to open the bottle, but I couldn't.
6	She to swim when she was eight years old.
7	We to have good weather, but unfortunately it
	rained.
8	My neighbor to water my plants while I was on
	vacation.
9	We to have dinner outside, but sadly it was too cold
10	I went to the bank because I to talk to the manager.

5 SPEAKING

Work in pairs. Take turns.

- A Tell your partner about the things below.
- B Respond to what A says. Ask questions.
- A Answer, then ask What about you?
- a country you want to go to something you would like to learn to do something you need to do tomorrow a vacation you are planning to take soon a famous person you hope to meet one day a movie you want to see soon a dangerous sport you would like to try
- something you **need to buy** soon a singer or group you **hope to see** one day
- a change you are planning to make to your lifestyle

I really want to go New Zealand.

(Really? Why New Zealand?

Because I have a cousin there. What about you?)

(I want to go to Cuba...

6 WRITING

- a Write your own bucket list of five things you would like to do this year.
- **b** Compare your list with a partner. Did you choose any of the same things? Is there anything on his / her list that you'd like to add to yours?





1 How smart is your phone?

What do you use your phone for the most?

1 take photos and I play games.

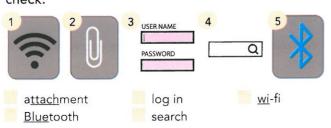
G definite article: the or no the V phones and the internet P the

VOCABULARY phones and the internet

Look at the phone screen below. How many of the apps and functions do you have on your phone?



- b Match icons in a to activities 1-13. Which can you use when you aren't online?
 - 1 share a photo (on a social media website)
 - 2 download an app
 - 3 Skype a friend
 - 4 send a text message
 - 5 upload a video
 - 6 message a friend
- 7 post a tweet
- 8 send an email
- 9 take a photo
- 10 get directions
- 11 read a book
- 12 get in shape
- 13 listen to a song
- 11.9 Listen and repeat activities 1–13.
- 11.10 Match the words and pictures. Listen and check.



LISTENING & SPEAKING

- 11.11 Listen to three people (A–C) talking about their phones. What's the first thing they say they use their phones for?
- b Listen again. Which speaker (A-C)...?
 - 1 doesn't want the newest phone
 - 2 often checks train times on his / her phone
 - 3 doesn't have an iPhone
 - prefers normal books to e-books
 - 5 likes playing games on his / her phone
 - gets a new phone when the contract lets him / her
 - 7 uses an app to track his / her money
 - has an app that he / she only uses at night
 - 9 uses an app to help with his / her diet
- Answer the questions with a partner.
 - 1 What phone do you have? How often do you change phones?
 - 2 What three things do you do the most on it?
 - 3 Is there anything on the list in 1b that you never do on your phone? Why not?
 - 4 Do you have any apps apart from the ones in 1a that you use a lot? What are they?
 - 5 Do you have any unusual apps on your phone? What are they?

READING

- Look at photos 1-6. What can you see?
- Read the article and check. What did people use each thing for?
- Talk to a partner. Do you do any of these things? How often? Why (not)?

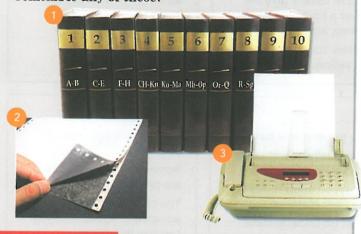
go to the bank go to travel agents buy CDs look something up in an encyclopedia use phone booths buy stamps look at paper maps write by hand read printed books

(I never go to the bank. I do everything with a banking app.

Pages

Life before the internet

This morning in the office somebody mentioned "carbon paper." "What's that?" our intern Francesca asked. She genuinely had no idea. For all of you who are too young to remember, we used carbon paper to make one or two copies of a document as it was typed. That's where the term "cc" or "carbon copy" came from. After that conversation, we started to remember life before the internet. Can you remember any of these?



FAX MACHINES Sending an email is so easy these days, but some years ago, when you needed to send something to somebody urgently and the mail was too slow, you sent a fax. When they were introduced in the 1970s, people thought they were a technological miracle. "You can print something and send it over the phone in seconds! Magic!" Yellow

THE YELLOW PAGES If you needed to make an appointment with your hair stylist or call for Chinese take-out, what did you do? You looked up the phone number or address in a big fat yellow book - the Yellow Pages. Amazingly, it still exists online.



WALKMANS This is how we listened to music. A Walkman was a lot heavier than an MP3 player! And if you didn't have the cassette or CD of a song, you couldn't listen to it.



A THOMAS GUIDE If you had a meeting or job interview, or you wanted to go to a new restaurant in a part of town you didn't know, what did you always take with you? Your Thomas Guide maps. And your reading glasses to read the street names, because they were so small!

GRAMMAR definite article

- a Look at the three sentences. Do you agree? Say why (not).
 - · Men use the internet more than women.
 - The best place for children to learn how to use new technology is at school.
 - It's bad manners to use your phone when you're having lunch or dinner.
- Look at the sentences in a again. Complete the rules with "Use the" or "Don't use the."

1	before superlatives.
2	when you talk about people or
	things in general.
3	before meals and some general
	places, e.g., lunch, work, college.
4	when there is only one of
	something (sun, world, etc.).

© p.144 Grammar Bank 11C

PRONUNCIATION & SPEAKING the

11.13 Listen to the phrases below. How is the pronounced in the two groups? Why?

1 the alphabet 2 the president the end the sun the internet the world

- b Practice saying the phrases.
- Work in pairs. A choose a circle, think of three things, places, etc. and tell B. B respond and ask for more information. Then change roles. Be careful to only use the when it's necessary!

I think women like shopping, but men don't.)

(I'm not sure. I'm a man and I like shopping!



things you did last night

kinds of food you love and 3 you hate

good ways you can travel around your town / city

places that you think are the most beautiful in your country

things you do before you go to work / school

men don't)



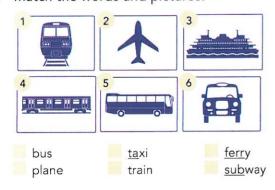
Practical English Going home

getting to the airport V public transportation

JENNY'S LAST MORNING



- 11.14 Watch or listen to Rob and Jenny. Mark the sentences T (true) or F (false).
 - 1 Rob arrives late.
 - 2 He has a coffee with Jenny.
 - 3 Jenny has bad news for him.
 - 4 Rob thinks A writer in New York is a good name for a column.
 - 5 Rob needs time to think.
- b Watch or listen again. Say why the F sentences are false.
- 2 VOCABULARY public transportation
- Match the words and pictures.



b @11.15 Listen and check. Then cover the words and look at the pictures. Say the words.

Complete the headings with a word from a.

You get one at a ~ stand or by waving your hand. They are also called cabs. People usually give the driver a tip (= some extra money, about 15-20%). In New York City, they are yellow.

You get one at an airport. First, you have to check in. Then you go through security to the departure lounge. Finally, you go to your

You get one at a station. You usually need to get a ticket or a card first. Then you need to find the right platform. Most go underground in big cities.

You get one at a ~ station or a ~ stop. Some are public and some are private. You can buy a ticket in advance or sometimes you can pay the driver. In New York City, they are blue and white.

d Cover the facts and look at the headings. Try to remember two facts about each type of public transportation.

GETTING TO THE AIRPORT



11.16 Watch or listen to Jenny's three conversations. How does she get to the airport?



b Watch or listen again. Complete the You hear phrases.

You say	You hear
Could you call me a taxi, please?	Yes, of course. 1to?
To Paddington Station.	And when would you like it ² ?
Now, please.	
How much is it?	That's £ ³ , please.
Make it £15. And could I have a receipt?	Thank you very much,
Could I have a ticket to Heathrow Airport, please?	Single or ⁵ ?
Single, please.	Standard or 6class?
Standard, please.	That's £18.
Can I pay by credit card?	Yes, of ⁷

- c <u>11.17</u> Watch or listen and repeat the **You say** phrases. <u>Copy</u> the <u>rhy</u>thm.
- d Practice the conversation with a partner.
- e in pairs, role-play the conversation. Then change roles.
 - A (book open) You are the receptionist, the taxi driver, and the ticket clerk. The taxi costs \$12.60. The ticket costs \$32.50.
 - **B** (book closed) You want to get a taxi to Penn Station, and then a train to JFK Airport. Begin with Could you call me a taxi, please?

4 SAYING GOODBYE

- a 11.18 Watch or listen and complete what happens.
 - 1 Jenny is worried because...
 - 2 Rob goes to the airport because...
 - 3 Rob tells Jenny that he wants to...
 - 4 Eddie isn't going to meet Jenny in New York because...
 - 5 Rob is happy because Eddie is...
 - 6 Jenny needs to go because...
- b Look at the Social English phrases. Who says them: Jenny or Rob?

Social English

- 2 Thank you so much.
- 3 I'm so happy.
- 4 Have a good journey.
- 5 See you in New York!
- c 11.19 Watch or listen and check. Then watch or listen and repeat the phrases.
- d Complete conversations A–E with **Social English** phrases 1–5. Practice with a partner.

A		Yes, see you there! It's going to be great!
В	Excuse me, is this your bag? It was under the chair.	Oh, yes it is
С	Is everything OK?	Yes, everything's great!
D	There are no taxis at the airport!	Oh no! How are we going to get to the hotel?
Ε	Bye! Call me when you get there.	Don't worry! Bye.

American and British English

one-way ticket = American English single ticket = British English round-trip ticket = American English return ticket = British English coach = American English standard = British English

CAN YOU...?

- ask for a taxi
- buy a ticket for public transportation
- use common phrases, e.g., Thank you so much, See you in (New York), etc.

12A I've seen it ten times!

Have you seen Game of Thrones?

No, but I've read the books.

G present perfect V irregular past participles P sentence stress

GRAMMAR present perfect

- Look at the photos from two movies and a TV show. Can you match them to the books?
- b @12.1 Listen to three conversations. Complete them with the phrases below.

I've read the book I haven't seen it Have you seen it No, I haven't Yes, I have

1	Stella Paul	The first Jurassic Park is on TV tonight. Have you seen it? And
	Stella	The movie's better than the book, I think. Let's watch it then. I know it's an old movie, but I haven't seen it.
2	Matt Tom	Have you read the <i>Game of Thrones</i> books? They're really long! Life's too short for 700-page books!
	Matt Tom	Have you watched the TV show? Yes, I've watched the first three seasons, and I've downloaded the fourth.
3	Ann Mike Ann Mike	Have you seen the movie It? The recent one. Is it the movie of the Stephen King book? Yes. I've heard of it, but I've read the book – it's great.

Listen to and read the conversations again. Complete the chart for read, and answer the questions with a partner.

+	I've read	the book.
Ξ		the book.
?		the book?
/		
v v	***************************************	

- 1 What is the full form of I've read?
- 2 How do you think have and haven't change in the third person singular?
- 3 Seen, read, and heard are irregular past participles. What are the base forms?
- 4 Watched and downloaded are regular past participles. What are the base forms?
- 5 When Tom says I've watched the first three seasons, do we know when he watched them?
- © p.146 Grammar Bank 12A













е	Complete 1–10 with a past participle from the lis	st
	of regular verbs.	

act ask believe book download kill open play travel work

I've never...

- 1 opened a bank account.
- 2 _____ a flight online.
- _____ in a play or movie.
- _____ a team sport.
- _____ an insect.
- 6 _____ as a waiter.
- 7 _____ in horoscopes.
- 8 _____ somebody to marry me.
- _____ to another continent.
- _____ a movie or music without paying.
- With a partner, say which sentences are true for you.

PRONUNCIATION sentence stress

12.3 Listen and repeat the conversation. Copy the rhythm.

> **Martian** seen No haven't read book Yes have I've read twice

- Write down three more movies or TV shows from books. Have conversations with a partner as in a.
- **VOCABULARY** irregular past participles
- Look at the past participles. Which verbs are they from? Write the base form and the simple past.

	base form	simple past	past participle
1	buy	bought	bought
2			fallen
3			given
4			heard
5			left
6			read
7			seen
8			told

b 12.4 Listen and check. How do you say read (base form) and read (simple past and past participle)?

- 12.5 Cover a. Listen and say the simple past and past participle.
 - buy (bought, bought)
- Complete the **Verb** column with a past participle from a.

		Verb
1	Have you ever a Japanese novel?	
2	Ben's in love with Sally.	
3	Have you Mike about the party?	-
4	We've the news – congratulations!	
5	She's never X-Men.	-
6	Tim's some tickets for the game.	
7	Oh no! I've my bag on the train.	
8	I've my old computer to my brother.	

Cover the Verb column. Say the sentences.

LISTENING & SPEAKING

Complete the phrases with the past participle of the verb in parentheses.

Movies, books, and TV

Have yo	u ever?
1	asleep at the movies (fall)
2	the soundtrack of a movie (buy)
3	the movie theater before the end of a movie (leave)
4	a movie more than three times (see)
5	during a movie (cry)
6	a movie in English with subtitles (see)
7	somebody to be quiet during a movie (tell)
8	a book more than once (read)
9	watching a TV show after the first or second season (stop)
10	to an audiobook (listen)
11	a book to a friend as a present (give)
12	three or more episodes of a TV show in one evening (watch)

b 12.6 Listen to six people, A-F. Which guestion (1-12) in a does each person answer?

В C D E

- Listen again. Make notes about their answers.
- d Choose six of the questions in a. Ask a different person each question. If they answer Yes, I have., ask What movie / book / TV show was it? Write their name and answer.
- Tell the class your two most interesting answers.



12B He's been everywhere!

Have you been to the new Thai restaurant?

Yes, I have. I went there last week.



1 LISTENING

a Look at the list of ten popular types of foreign restaurant in the US. Answer the questions.

Chinese French Greek Indian Italian Japanese Mexican Spanish Thai Turkish

- 1 Which do you think are the top three?
- 2 Which of these kinds of food have you eaten?
- 3 What are the most popular types of foreign restaurant where you live?
- b ①12.7 Listen to four people trying to decide where to go for dinner. Do they agree which restaurant to go to?
- c Listen again. Check (✓) the restaurants Joe has been to, and write when. Write ? if he doesn't say when.

	Has he been there?	When?
Curry Up		
The Great Wall		
Thai-Chi		
Mexican Wave		
The Acropolis		

d Do you know any annoying people like Joe?

- 2 GRAMMAR present perfect or simple past?
- a Look at part of the conversation in 1. Answer the questions.

Alison Have you been to Mexican Wave?

Joe Yes, I have.

Alison When did you go there?

Joe Last month. I went for dinner with people

from work.

- 1 What tense is Alison's first question?
- 2 What tense is Alison's second question?
- 3 Which of the two questions is about a specific time in the past?

b Gp.146 Grammar Bank 12B

- c Write down the names of two restaurants you've been to recently, two movies you've seen recently, and two places you've visited recently.
- d In pairs, ask and answer questions.

(Yes, I have.

When did you go there? Did you like it?)

3 VOCABULARY learning irregular verbs

a **12.10** Write the base forms for the irregular verbs. Then listen and check.

	base form	simple past
1		got
2		had
3		lost
4		met
5		won

b **12.11** Now look at some verbs where the past participle is different from the simple past. Write the base form and the simple past. Then listen and check.

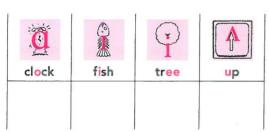
	base form	simple past	past participle
1		_	been
2			done
3			eaten
4	O		spoken
5		-	sung

c p.165 Irregular verbs <u>Underline</u> the verbs that have the same form for the simple past and the past participle.

4 PRONUNCIATION irregular past participles

a Put the irregular past participles in the correct column.

bought done eaten fallen given got left lost met read seen spoken sung won





b <u>12.12</u> Listen and check. Practice saying them.

5 SPEAKING

a Look at question 1 below. What words are missing in the present perfect question? What form do you need of the verb in **bold**? What words are missing in the simple past question?

Recently...

Con the	Present perfect	Simple past
1	/ be to the movies recently?	What / see? / like it?
2	/ play any sports recently?	What / play? Who / play it with?
3	/ eat out with friends recently?	Where / go? What / have?
4	/ get up really late recently?	Why? / miss anything important?
5	/ buy anything online recently?	What / buy? Where / buy it from?

In your life...

	Present perfect	Simple past
1195	/ ever sing something in public?	What / sing? How / feel?
2	/ ever lose your phone?	Where / lose it? / find it?
3	/ ever win a trophy or medal?	What / win it for?
4	/ ever speak to a famous person?	Who / speak to? What / say?
5	/ ever have very long (or short) hair?	When / have it? / like it?

b Work in pairs. A ask B the questions. If B answers Yes, I have., ask the simple past questions. Then change roles.

Have you been to the movies recently? Yes, I have. What did you see?



The American English File interview

G review: question formation

1 READING

- a Look at the photos of Sir Ian McKellen. Do you know the names of any movies he has been in? Have you seen any of them?
- b Sir Ian McKellen was interviewed especially for American English File. Read the interview and complete sections A–F with a heading from the list.

Your abilities
Your work experiences
Your home
Your tastes

- c Look at sentences 1–10 about Sir Ian McKellen. Some are true and some are false. In which section of the interview do you expect to find the information?
 - 1 He became an actor when he was a student.
 - 2 He lives outside London.
 - 3 He gets up early every day.
 - 4 He's never been to India.
 - 5 He spends a long time on the internet every day.
 - 6 He read The Lord of the Rings when he was young.
 - 7 His desk isn't very neat.
 - 8 He doesn't like animals.

1 Vous lifestyle

- 9 He relaxes by playing games.
- 10 He's not interested in learning new things.
- Read the interview again and mark the sentences
 T (true) or F (false). Say why the F ones are false.
- e Talk to a partner. What three things from the interview with Sir Ian McKellen did you find the most interesting?

2 GRAMMAR & SPEAKING review: question formation

a In pairs, look at the groups of questions (1–6). Complete them with 's, are, can, do, did, or have.

	Tour mesty	/ie
	What	you usually do in the morning?
	How	you relax?
	What	you do last weekend?
2	Your home	
	What	your favorite room in your home?
		you neat or messy?
		you do a lot of housework last week?



An interview with

Sir Ian McKellen

A Your tastes

What kind of music do you like? I hardly ever listen to music at home — I prefer going to concerts. I enjoy classical music and pop, but my favorite kind of music is traditional American jazz.

What book are you reading right now? I'm reading *The Hammersteins*, a biography of the American theater family written by Oscar Andrew Hammerstein.

Who's your favorite historical character? Perhaps William Shakespeare.

	you	s you speak? sing or play a musical instrument? _ you learning English?
	weekend? Where	your favorite place to spend the you go for your last vacation? you going to go for your next
	What book	_ your favorite time of year? you reading right now? / shows you like
(Whatever been to?	you seen recently? _ the most beautiful place you've ever been to the US or Britain?

b 12.13 Listen and check.





What time do you usually get up in the morning? If I am working, I get up one hour before I have to leave the house. If I am not working, and I went to bed late the night before, I get up at about 10:00 in the morning.

How much time do you spend a day on the internet? I can very easily spend three or four hours on the internet, answering emails, reading the news, etc. I think of the internet as a wonderful encyclopedia of information.

How do you relax? I enjoy a late-night Sudoku, but especially being with friends.



What's your favorite room in the house? Perhaps the living room where I cook and eat, and from where I can see the River Thames in London.

What do you always have on your desk? I always have too many letters, papers, and books, which are waiting for me to read.

Do you have any pets? I love dogs, but I can't have one because I'm often away from home.



What languages do you speak? I only speak English, but I can remember a little of the French I learned at school.

Can you play a musical instrument? No.

Is there something you would like to learn to do? Yes — many things, e.g., to sing well, to play the piano, and to speak foreign languages.



What's your favorite place in London? I love the River Thames and the views from its many bridges.

Where are you going to go for your next vacation? I am going to go to India for the first time in February.

What's the most beautiful city you've ever visited? I can't choose between Edinburgh, Prague, and Venice.



What was your first job? The first money I earned as a professional actor was when I was a student at Cambridge University in 1959. I played small parts in audio recordings of Shakespeare's plays.

Lord of the Rings? I read it first when I was preparing to play Gandalf in the movie trilogy.

What was the best and worst thing about filming The Lord of the Rings? The best thing about filming was discovering the countryside and people of New Zealand. But the worst thing was living away from home for a year or more.

as Magneto

When did you first read The



c Work with a partner.

A interview B with group 1. Ask more questions where appropriate, and show interest in B's answers.

B answer the questions, giving as much information as you can. Then B interview A with group 2, etc.

A What do you usually do in the morning?

B I get up at about 7:00. I have breakfast and then I go to class at school.

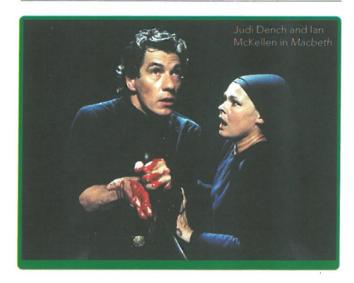
A What time do your classes start?

(B At 8:00.

3 D VIDEO LISTENING

a Watch the documentary Judi Dench – a life in acting. Check (✓) the six movies you hear. Have you seen any of them?

Macbeth A Room with a View Tea with Mussolini Henry V GoldenEye Mrs. Brown Skyfall Shakespeare in Love



- b Watch again. Put the events in the correct order.
 - She appeared in A Room with a View.
 - She played Queen Elizabeth I.
 - She worked with the Royal Shakespeare Company.
 - 1 She was born in York.
 - She appeared in her first James Bond movie.
 - She acted in the York Mystery Plays.
 - She played Queen Victoria in the movie Mrs. Brown.
 - She was in a production of *Macbeth* with Ian McKellen.
 - She won an Oscar.
- c Are there any famous actors from your country who are the same generation as Judi Dench and Ian McKellen? Do you like them?



Go online to watch the video and review the lesson

digi ZABAN &12 Review and Check

GRAMMAR

/	
Circle	e)a, b, or c.
1	You speak
	You speak a very slow b very slowly c very slowe
2	She plays tennis
	a very well b very good c very good
3	my massama meme
	a incredible hard b incredibly hard
4	c incredibly hardly
4	I'd like a Ferrari. a drive b to drive c driving
5	What do we need next?
J	a to do b do c doing
6	She wants to pass her exams, but she
	doesn't like
	a study b studing c studying
7	
	a The men b Men c The man
8	It's best place to eat in the city.
	a the bac-
9	Do you go to bed late on the
	weekends? a the b a c –
10	My grandfather never uses internet.
10	a the bac-
11	I've read the book, but I the movie.
	a haven't see b haven't saw
	c haven't seen
12	A Have you anyone famous?
	B Yes, I have. A famous movie actor.
40	a ever met b ever meet c met ever
13	he been to New York? a Has b Did c Have
1 /	
14	We to Los Angeles last year. a have gone b have been c went
15	
13	a has never work b have never worked
	c has never worked
VOC	ABULARY
ACC	ADULARI

a Write the opposite adjective or adverb.

		1-1
1	quickly	
2	safe	***
3	well	
4	noisy	
5	hot	31
6	weakly	X1.50.300

b Complete the sentences with these verbs.

ne	eed	learn	promise	want	-
1	ľd l	ike to _		to dance	the tango.
2	You	don't_		to wash i	t. You've only worn it once.
3	I ca	n't	to	be on tim	e. It depends on the traffic.
4	Do j lunc	•	to	go to a r	estaurant or a food truck for

c Complete the sentences with these internet words.

attachment download online website wi-fi

1	I always shop these days.
2	I can the song for you tonight.
3	You can find all the information on the hotel's
4	Don't open an if you don't know who it's from.
	I can't Skype you – our isn't working right now.
C	omplete the sentences with for, in, up, or with.
1	Log with your username and password.
2	I looked Coldplay on Wikipedia – the band started i 1996.
3	You can search most information on the internet.
4	Have you ever seen a movie subtitles?

e Write the past participle of these verbs.

1	see	saw	 4	give	gave	V
2	go	went	5	fall	fell	
3	know	knew	6	take	took	

PRONUNCIATION

d

- Pp.166-7 Sound Bank Review vowel and consonant sounds.
- b What sound do the pink letters have in these words? Match them to the sound pictures.



- c <u>Un</u>derline the stressed syllable.
 - 1 politely 3 delcide 5 web site 2 dan ger ous ly 4 at tach ment

CAN YOU understand this text?

Read the reviews of Pizza West once. Which review is most positive and which is most negative?





ALAN

I go here often because it's very close to my apartment. The pizza is OK, and it's not too expensive. The atmosphere

is great, perfect for a Friday or Saturday night. It's very popular, but if you don't mind waiting, you can usually get a table. Or book online!



STEVE AND JANE

Very expensive. In most pizza places. we usually pay about \$15 for a pizza: here it's \$22 for more or less the same

thing! The food is fine, but we definitely aren't going to eat there again.



SARAH

We've been here a lot and we always enjoy it. The menu is very good, and they have great appetizers as well as

pizzas. We went yesterday for an early dinner with our three-year-old daughter and they really made us feel at home - and they served a delicious birthday cake for her. Great food, friendly waiters, fantastic atmosphere.



BRIDGET

We booked a table, but when we got there, they asked us to sit with a lot of other people at a big table. We didn't

want to because there were only two of us. Then they asked us to wait until a different table was free, so we waited for 45 minutes! But I recommend it because the food is excellent!



The pizza here isn't the best I've tasted, but it's OK (and the salads are delicious). The service is a little bit

slow and the place is very busy - it can be really noisy. However, the atmosphere is great and it's obviously popular. Not the place for a romantic dinner - it's more of a fun, exciting place.

b Read the reviews again. Match them to the sentences. Who (A-E)...?

- 1 ____ says the waiters are nice
- 2 ____ says the food is too expensive
- 3 ____ says they have had better pizzas
- 4 ____ lives near the restaurant
- 5 ____ didn't like the table when they arrived
- 6 __ went for a special family meal
- 7 ____ thinks the prices are good
- 8 ____ doesn't recommend it for couples who want a quiet dinner

CAN YOU understand these people?

12.14 Watch or listen and answer the guestions.











Madeleine

Chris

Susan Martin

1 When Cara came to the US she was surprised

- a the number of people
- b the weather and the food
- c the parks and the attractions
- 2 Madeleine thinks that she drives ____ other people from her area of the US.
 - a better than b worse than c the same as
- 3 Chris would like to ____ soon.
 - a go to Australia c visit her parents
 - b go to Austria
- 4 Susan has seen the movie ____ more than three times.
 - c Gone with the Wind a Titanic
 - b Casablanca
- 5 Martin bought his phone ____ years ago.
- b three
- c four

CAN YOU say this in English?

Do the tasks with a partner. Check () the box if you can do these things.

Can you...?

- 1 say how people in your country drive and dress
- 2 say three things you would like to do in the future
- 3 say which of the following you prefer and why
 - · classical music or pop music
 - summer vacations or winter vacations
 - Chinese food or Japanese food
- 4 say what things you use the internet for, and how often
- 5 answer the questions below
 - · What city have you been to recently?
 - When did you go there? What did you do there?
 - What's the best / worst thing about your town?

Communication

1B WHERE ARE THEY FROM?

Student A

a Look at the chart. Take turns to ask and answer the questions about each person. Ask about person 1. Then answer **B** about person 2.

(Where's Masako from?
(Where in (country)?



Berlin

b Repeat for the other people.

Acapulco

1C WHAT'S HIS / HER REAL NAME?

Student A

a Look at list 1. Read the names of your four people. Two are their real names and two aren't. Cross out (X) the names you think are not their real names.



b Talk to **B**. Check your answers to **a**. Write the real name next to the photo.

Is_____ his / her real name?

What's his / her real name? How do you spell it?)

c Now look at list 2 and answer B's questions.

2A IN, ON, UNDER Student A

a Where are these things? Ask **B**. Draw them in the correct place in picture 1.

charger glasses keys laptop scissors umbrella wallet

Where's the charger?) (It's in the...

- b Look at picture 2. Answer B's questions.
- c Now compare your pictures. Are all the things in the correct place?



2B THE SAME OR DIFFERENT? Student A

- Describe picture 1 to B. Is your picture the same or different? Write S or D on the picture. Then listen to B describe picture 2, etc. Find eight differences.
 - A Number 1. It's an old house.

(B In my picture, it's a new house. They're different.

b Compare your pictures and check.



2C WHAT'S THE MATTER?

Student A

- Have this conversation in pairs.
 You are A.
 - A What's the matter?
 - B I'm sad.
 - A Cheer up.
 - B OK.
- Have four more conversations.
 Ask What's the matter? B answers.
 Then choose a phrase below.

Don't worry. It's OK. Take a vacation. Open the window. Have a drink.

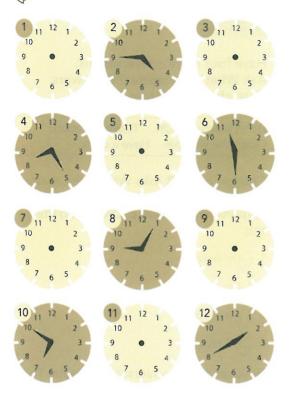
- c Change roles. B asks What's the matter? Answer with 1 below. B responds. Then respond, e.g., Thanks, OK, Good idea, etc.
 - 1 (I'm bored.
 - 2 (I'm cold.
 - 3 (I'm tired.
 - 4 (I'm hungry.
- d Have all eight conversations again. Try to do them from memory.

PE2 WHAT'S THE TIME?

Student A

Ask and answer questions with **B** and complete the times on the clocks. Then compare your clocks.

(Clock 1: What's the time?/What time is it?



4C SHORT LIFE, LONG LIFE?

Students A+B

Interview your partner. **A** ask the questions in the questionnaire. **B** answer and give more information if you can. Then change roles.

How often do you...?

1 have breakfast

- a hardly ever / never
- b sometimes / usually
- c always

2 eat fresh fruit and vegetables

- a hardly ever / never
- b once a day
- c three times a day

3 eat fast food

- a often
- b sometimes, not often
- c hardly ever / never

4 exercise

- a hardly ever / never
- b once or twice a week
- c three or four times a week

5 feel tired or stressed

- a always / often
- b sometimes
- c hardly ever / never

6 drink soda

- a every day
- b sometimes
- c hardly ever / never

7 see your friends

- a sometimes
- b often
- c very often

How many ...?

8 hours do you usually sleep a day

- a 0 to 4
- b 5 to 6
- c 7 to 9

cups of coffee do you drink a day

- a more than five
- b usually only one or two
- c I don't drink coffee.

10 Which of these is true for you?

- a I'm not very positive about life.
- b I'm usually positive about life.
- c I'm always positive about life.

Now calculate your partner's score.

a = 5 b = 7 c = 10Total score = number of years you live

4C IKARIA Student A

- a Read the article about Ikaria and answer the questions.
 - 1 Where is Ikaria?
 - 2 What do the people eat and drink?
 - 3 What exercise do they do?
 - 4 What do they do after lunch?
 - 5 Is Ikaria a safe place? How do you know?
 - 6 Do they have a good social life? What examples does the article give?
 - 7 What do people call the island?
- Listen to B describe life in Nicoya.
- c Tell B about life in Ikaria. Use your answers to questions 1–7. What do the two places have in common?

Ikaria, Greece

Ikaria is a small Greek island near the coast of Turkey. How do the people there live? They eat a lot of beans, potatoes, and green vegetables, and they sometimes eat fish, but they hardly ever eat red meat or sugar. They drink a lot of herbal tea. They do a lot of exercise, but they never go to a gym. They work in their gardens, and they walk everywhere – not many people in Ikaria have a car. They also take a siesta every afternoon.

Ikaria is a very safe place. In the village of Raches, the police station is closed. The people say they don't need police. People also have a very good social life. The island is famous for its

tradition of panagiria, or festivals. Between May and October, the island has between two and four festivals every week, where people eat, drink, and dance all night. They call Ikaria "the island where people forget to die."

Glossary beans

herbal tea





siesta a rest or sleep taken in the early afternoon, especially in hot countries

5B SPOT THE DIFFERENCES Student A

You and B have the same picture but with eight differences.

- Tell B what is happening in apartments 1-4 and in the yard on the left. What is happening in B's picture? Listen and circle the differences.
- Listen to B describe what is happening in apartments 5-8 and in the yard on the right. What is happening in your picture? Is it the same or different? Tell B. Circle the differences.
- When you finish, compare the two pictures.



5C WHAT DO YOU DO? WHAT ARE YOU DOING NOW? Student A

a Ask B your questions.

What do you do? What are you doing now? Are you wearing a watch today? Do you usually wear a watch? What kind of books do you usually read? What are you reading right now?

b Answer B's questions.

6A READING IN ENGLISH Students A+B

Interview your partner.

What kind of things do you read in your own language?

a books

e work documents

b newspapers

f movie subtitles or sona lyrics

c magazines

d websites

g other (what?)

When and where do you usually read?

- a at work / school
- b when you are on a bus or train
- c on vacation
- d before you go to bed

Do you ever need to read in English? What?



Reading in English

Reading Graded Readers, e.g., the Oxford Bookworms series, helps you to learn and remember vocabulary and grammar. Buy a Starter (A1) or Stage 1 (A2/B1) level book with audio.



8A POLICE INTERVIEW Student A

Work in pairs with another **A**. You are police officers. There was a robbery last night. **B** and **B** are your suspects. They are friends. They say that they went out for dinner and went to the movies last night. You want to know if this is true.

a As look at the police interview form and prepare to ask the Bs the questions. Think of questions to get more details about the evening, e.g., What did you eat and drink? What movie was it?

Dollar interview form

		Date:	
	What time?	Where?	More details
/ meet?			
/ have dinner?			
go to the movies?			
What / do a	after the movie	s?	
What time	/ get home?		

- **b** Interview one of the **B**s. Write down his / her answers in the form. (Your partner interviews the other **B**.)
- c Compare with your partner. Did the two **B**s tell exactly the same story? If not, arrest them!

8B IS THERE...? ARE THERE...? Student A

a Make questions with Is there a...? or Are there any...? to ask **B**.

Is there a bathtub in your bathroom?

- 1 bathtub in your bathroom
- 2 books in your living room
- 3 stores near your house
- 4 desk in your bedroom
- 5 dishwasher in your kitchen
- 6 supermarkets on your street
- **b** Answer **B**'s questions with Yes, there is / are. or No, there isn't / aren't.

8C A HAUNTED ROOM Student A

a Some people say there are haunted hotel rooms all around the world. Look at the photo of a haunted hotel room in the UK for one minute. Try to remember what's in the room.



b Ask B the questions.

/ a single or a double bed? (There was a double bed.)
How many tables / ? (There were three.)
/ a rug on the floor? (Yes, there was.)
/ any armchairs? Where were they? (Yes, there were.
They were across from the bed, next to the windows.)
/ any books in the room? (No, there weren't.)
What / over the bed? (There was a light.)

c Close your book. Answer B's questions.

9B SUGAR AND SALT Students A+B

How much sugar?

According to the American Heart Association, a woman should have **no more than 24g** (grams) of sugar a day (= 6 teaspoons) and a man **no more than 36g** (= 9 teaspoons).

- a can of soda has approximately 35 g of sugar
- an apple has approximately 23 g of sugar
- a small (40 g) bar of dark chocolate has approximately
 10 g of sugar
- an egg doesn't have any sugar

How much salt?

According to UK Government studies, an adult should eat **no more than 6g** of salt a day.

- a large bag of potato chips has approximately 3 g of salt
- a slice of white bread has approximately 0.5 g of salt
- a bottle of mineral water has approximately 0.0023 q of salt
- a bottle of olive oil doesn't have any salt



9C QUIZ NIGHT Student A

a Complete your sentences 1–8 with the comparative form of the **bold** adjectives.

1	small Brazil is than the US. (True. Brazil is 3,300,000 million square miles and the US is 3,790,000 million square miles.)
2	cold Alaska is than Greenland. (False. The lowest recorded temperature in Alaska was –80 degrees Fahrenheit, but in Greenland it was recorded at –87 Fahrenheit.)
3	old Oxford University is than Cambridge University. (True. Oxford University was founded in about 1170 and Cambridge 40 years later, in 1209.)
4	short The English alphabet is than the Arabic alphabet. (True. There are 26 letters in the English alphabet and 28 in the Arabic alphabet.)
5	expensive Taxis in Tokyo are than taxis in New York. (True. A 2-mile trip in Tokyo costs approximately \$16, but in New York it costs \$12.)
6	dry The Sahara Desert is than the Atacama Desert. (False. In the Sahara Desert, the average rainfall is 1 inch, and in the Atacama Desert, it's 0.0004 inches.)
7	far New Zealand is south than Australia. (True. It's about 1,250 miles southeast of Australia.)
8	hot The Earth is than the moon. (False. The temperature of the moon during the day can be 250 degrees Fahrenheit, but the maximum temperature of the Earth is about 140 degrees Fahrenheit.)

b Play Quiz Night. You are the host.

Read sentence 1 to B. B says "true" or "false."

Tell **B** if he / she is right and give the extra information in parentheses. If **B** is right, he / she wins \$100.

Then read sentence 2 for \$200, sentence 3 for \$400, sentence 4 for \$800, etc.

If **B** gets a question wrong, he / she loses all the money but continues to play. The prize starts again from \$100.

c Play Quiz Night again. You are the contestant. Listen to B's sentences and answer. Who won more money?

10A I'M A TOURIST, HELP! Student A

a Imagine you are an English-speaking tourist in your town (or the nearest big town). B lives in the town. Ask B six questions about the town using superlative adjectives. Get as much information as you can.

What's the most beautiful square?

(I think it's the Jemaa el-Fnaa.

Where is it?)

(It's in the center, near the Koutoubia Mosque. It has...

1 What's _______ square? (beautiful)

2 What's ______ way to get around? (easy)

3 What's ______ museum? (interesting)

4 What's ______ time of year to visit? (good)

5 What's ______ place to eat typical food?

(nice)

6 What's ______ shopping area? (famous)

b Then change roles. B is an English-speaking tourist in your town. Listen and answer his / her questions about the town. Explain everything very clearly and give as much information as you can!

10B WHAT ARE YOU GOING TO DO?

Student A

a Ask B the questions below. Use going to.

Tonight

What / do after class? / study English? Why (not)?

Tomorrow

What time / get up tomorrow? Where / have lunch?

Next weekend

/ go away next weekend? Where to? What / do on Saturday night?

(What are you going to do after class?

b Answer B's questions.



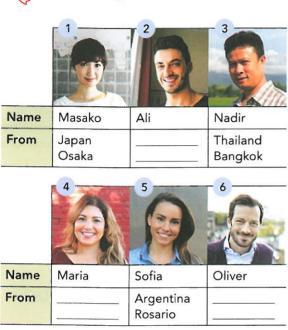
1B WHERE ARE THEY FROM?

Student B

a Look at the chart. Take turns to ask and answer the questions about each person. Answer **A** about person 1. Then ask about person 2.

(Where's Ali from?

(Where in (country)?



b Repeat for the other people.

1C WHAT'S HIS / HER REAL NAME?

Student B

a Look at list 2. Read the names of your four people. Two are their real names and two aren't. Cross (X) the names you think are **not** their real names.



- b Now look at list 1 and answer A's questions.
- c Talk to A. Check your answers to a. Write the real name next to the photo.

Is _____ his / her real name?

What's his / her real name? How do you spell it?)

2A IN, ON, UNDER Student B

Look at picture 1. Answer A's questions.

Where's the charger? (It's in the...

b Where are these things? Ask A. Draw them in the correct place in picture 2.

file headphones magazine phone photo tissues watch

c Now compare your pictures. Are all the things in the correct place?





2B THE SAME OR DIFFERENT? Student B

- a Listen to A describe picture 1. Is your picture the same or different? Write S or D on the picture. Then describe picture 2 to A, etc. Find eight differences.
 - B Number 2. They're expensive watches.)
 - (A In my picture, they're expensive watches, too. They're the same.
- b Compare your pictures and check.



2C WHAT'S THE MATTER?

Student B

- a Have this conversation in pairs. You are B.
 - A What's the matter?
 - B I'm sad.
 - A Cheer up.
 - B OK.
- b Have four more conversations. A asks What's the matter? Answer with 1 below. A responds. Then respond, e.g., Thanks, OK, Good idea, etc.
 - 1 (I'm hot.
 - 2 (I'm thirsty.
 - 3 (I'm worried.
 - 4 (I'm stressed.
- Have four more conversations. Ask What's the matter?
 A answers. Then choose a phrase below.

Close the window. Have a sandwich. Read a book. Sit down.

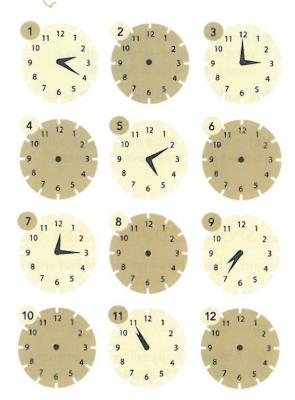
d Have all eight conversations again. Try to do them from memory.

PE2 WHAT'S THE TIME?

Student B

Ask and answer questions with **A** and complete the times on the clocks. Then compare your clocks.

(Clock 2: What's the time?/What time is it?



4C NICOYA Student B

- a Read the article about Nicoya and answer the questions.
 - 1 Where is Nicoya?
 - 2 What do people there do?
 - 3 What do they eat and drink?
 - 4 What exercise do they do?
 - 5 When do they get up and go to bed?
 - 6 How long do they sleep?
 - 7 What is a *plan de vida*? How does it make a difference in their lives?
- b Tell A about life in Nicoya. Use your answers to questions 1–7.
- c Listen to A describe life in Ikaria. What do the two places have in common?

Nicoya, Costa Rica

Nicoya is in northwest Costa Rica, near the border with Nicaragua. Most of the people who live there are farmers. In Nicoya people eat small meals. They usually have beans, rice, sweet potatoes, and sometimes a little meat, an egg, or some cheese. They also have some unusual fruits, for example, the *marañón*, a fruit similar to an orange, with a lot of vitamin C. They drink a lot of water – the local water is unusually rich in calcium and magnesium.

They are very active during the day – they work outside, and they walk everywhere, or ride horses. They don't watch television and they don't use the internet, so they go to bed when it's dark and get up when it's light. They sleep well, usually eight hours a night.

All people in Nicoya have something called a *plan de vida*. It means "a reason to get up every morning." This may be work or family, and it's what makes even people who are over 100 still feel necessary.

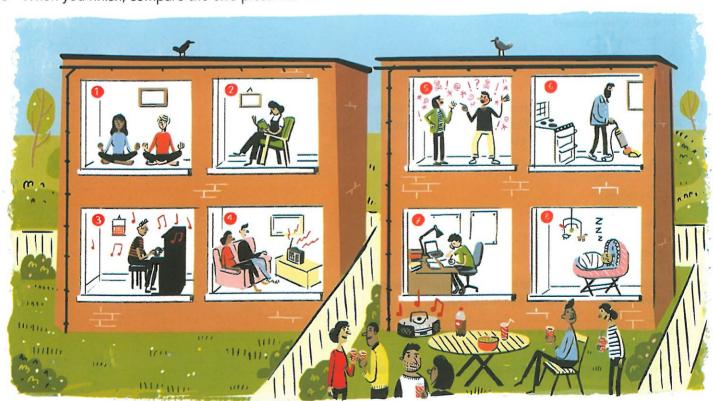




5B SPOT THE DIFFERENCES Student B

You and A have the same picture but with eight differences.

- a Listen to A describe what is happening in apartments 1–4 and in the yard on the left. What is happening in your picture? Is it the same or different? Tell A. Circle) the differences.
- b Tell **A** what is happening in apartments 5–8 and in the yard on the right. What is happening in **A**'s picture? Listen and circle the differences.
- c When you finish, compare the two pictures.





5C WHAT DO YOU DO? WHAT ARE YOU DOING NOW? Student B

- a Answer A's questions.
- b Ask A your questions.

Is it raining now?

Do your parents work? What do they do?
Think of someone in your family. What do you think they are doing now?
What kind of TV shows do you like?
What TV shows are you watching right now?

Does it rain a lot at this time of year?

8A POLICE INTERVIEW Student B

Work in pairs with another **B**. You are friends. Last night you met, had dinner, and went to the movies. There was a robbery last night. **A** and **A** are police officers. You are their suspects, and they want to interview you separately. If you both tell exactly the same story, you are innocent!

a Bs prepare your story. Answer these questions. Think of more details, e.g., What did you eat and drink? What movie was it?

What time / Where did you meet? What time / Where did you have dinner? What time / Where did you go to the movies? What did you do after the movies? What time did you get home?

- b Answer A's questions. (Your partner answers the other A.)
- c Did you and your friend tell the same story?

8B IS THERE...? ARE THERE...? Student B

- a Answer A's questions with Yes, there is / are. or No, there isn't / aren't.
- **b** Make questions with *Is there a...?* or *Are there any...?* to ask **A**.

Is there a TV in your kitchen?)

- 1 TV in your kitchen
- 2 pictures in your classroom
- 3 park near your house
- 4 mirror in your living room
- 5 plants in your hall
- 6 shelves in your bedroom

8C A HAUNTED ROOM Student B

a Some people say there are haunted hotel rooms all around the world. Look at the photo of a haunted hotel room in the UK for one minute. Try to remember what's in the room.



- b Close your book. Answer A's questions.
- c Ask A the questions.

/ any plants or flowers in the room? (No, there weren't.)
/ a table between the armchairs? (Yes, there was.)
How many windows / ? (There were two.)
What / at the end of the bed? (There was a TV.)
/ a sofa? (No, there wasn't.)
/ a phone? Where was it? (Yes, there was, It was on the



9C QUIZ NIGHT Student B

a Complete your sentences 1–8 with the comparative form of the **bold** adjectives.

1	old The Great Wall of China is than the pyramids in Egypt. (False. The pyramids are about 4,500 years old, but the Great Wall of China was only finished 600 years ago.)
2	small Monaco is than San Marino. (True. Monaco is .77 square miles, but San Marino is 23 square miles.)
3	high The mountains on Earth arethan the mountains on Mars. (False. Olympus Mons on Mars is about 15 miles high, but Everest is only about 5.6 miles high.)
4	big China is than Canada. (False. Canada is 3,900,000 square miles and China is about 3,700,000 square miles.)
5	popular In the UK, coffee is than tea. (False. On average, the British drink 165,000,000 cups of tea a day and 70,000,000 cups of coffee.)
6	large A gigabyte is than a megabyte. (True. A megabyte is 1,024 kilobytes and a gigabyte is 1,024 megabytes.)
7	warm The Mediterranean Sea is than the Red Sea. (False. The average temperature of the Mediterranean Sea is 66 degrees Fahrenheit, but the average temperature of the Red Sea is 82 degrees Fahrenheit.)
8	busy Heathrow Airport in London is than Atlanta Airport in the US. (False. 100 million people a year travel through Atlanta, but only 70 million go through Heathrow.)

b Play Quiz Night. You are the contestant.

A reads you his / her sentence 1. Say if it's true or false.

A tells you if you are right and gives you extra information. If you are right, you win \$100.

A then reads you his / her sentence 2 for \$200, sentence 3 for \$400, sentence 4 for \$800, etc.

If you get a question wrong, you lose all the money but continue to play. The prize starts again from \$100.

c Play Quiz Night again. You are the host. Use your sentences 1–8. Who won more money?

10A I'M A TOURIST. HELP! Student B

- a A is an English-speaking tourist in your town. Listen and answer his / her questions about the town. Explain everything very clearly and give as much information as you can!
- b Then change roles. Imagine you are an English-speaking tourist in your town (or the nearest big town). A lives in the town. Ask A six questions about the town using superlative adjectives. Get as much information as you can.

What's the oldest building?) (I think it's the cathedral. How old is it?) (I'm not sure. About 500 years, maybe? building? (old) 1 What's 2 What's _____ place to go for a day trip? (nice) _ place to go to with children? 3 What's (good) _____ souvenir? (typical) 4 What's ___ 5 What's area to go at night? (popular) 6 Where do you have _____ view? (beautiful)

10B WHAT ARE YOU GOING TO DO?

Student B

- a Answer A's questions.
- b Ask A the questions below. Use going to.

Tonight

What / do after dinner? What time / go to bed?

Tomorrow

/ go to work (or school) tomorrow? What / do in the evening?

Next weekend

/ go out on Friday night? What / do? What / do on Sunday?

(What are you going to do after dinner?

Writing

1 COMPLETING A FORM

Capital letters

In English, these words start with a CAPITAL letter.

- names and last names Melissa Rogers
- continents, countries, nationalities, and languages Asia, China, Chinese
- towns and cities New York
- days of the week Monday
- the first word in a sentence Her father is from Vancouver.
- the pronoun I She's Russian and I'm Mexican.
- Read the information box.
- b Complete the online form with your information.

VISIT AND SHORT STAY Visa application form for a visitor or student					
About you					
First name	Last name (Family name)				
Mr. / Mrs. / Ms.	Date of birth				
Gender male	female				
Marital status	remaie				
married single	divorced separated				
	divorted Separated				
Nationality					
Place of birth: country	town / city				
Contact information H	ome address and zip code				
Email address					
Phone number:					
home (landline)	cell				
Passport / Identity card	d number				

c Write this paragraph again with CAPITAL letters where necessary.

my name's omar. i'm from lima in peru, and i speak spanish, french, and a little english. my teacher is american. her name's kate. my english classes are on tuesdays and thursdays.

d Write a similar paragraph about you. Check that the capital letters are correct.

G p.11

2 A PERSONAL PROFILE

a Read Jill's profile. Do you have similar interests?



- and, but, or
 - and I speak English and a little Spanish.
 I like pop and rap music.
 - but I'm from Chicago, but I live in Los Angeles. I don't watch TV very much, but I like comedy shows.
 - or I don't like opera or jazz.I don't watch basketball or other sports.
 - e.g. e.g. = for example. We often use it when we write informally.

 I like pop music, e.g., Ariana Grande.
- b Read the information box. Then write a profile of yourself. Use the same headings (Hometown, Music, etc.). Attach a photo if you can. Use and, but, and or to join your ideas together.
- c Check your profile. Make sure you use and, but, and or correctly.





3 AN ARTICLE

- a Read Cristina's article. Find her answers to questions 1–4.
 - 1 What's your favorite day of the week? Why?
 - 2 What do you usually do in the morning?
 - 3 Where do you have lunch? Who with? What do you usually do after lunch?
 - 4 What do you usually do in the evening?

after and then

Use after + another word, e.g., after lunch, after work, after that, etc.

Use then to say what happens next, e.g., I get up and then I have breakfast.

b Look at the highlighted words to check that you understand them, and read the information box. Then use them to complete the sentences below.

1	Jack usually gets up at 7:30 he takes a shower.
2	lunch, I often sleep for half an hour.
3	She always takes a bath she goes to bed.
4	the week, I work 9:00 5:00.
5	I get home at about 7:30, take the dog for a walk, and after, I have dinner.

- 6 We usually watch TV _____ it's time to go to bed.
- c Plan an article called My favorite day. Plan four paragraphs. Make notes to answer questions 1–4 in a. What other information could you include to make the article interesting?
- d Now write your article. Choose the ideas you want to use. Don't forget to use some of the highlighted words to link together your ideas.
- Check your article. Make sure you use the highlighted words correctly.
- f Show your article to another student. Can you find one thing in your partner's article that is the same for you?
- **p**.33

My favorite day

March 24 #favorite#weekend#family#food



My favorite day of the week is Saturday because it's the first day of the weekend!

I get up very early during the week, so on Saturday it's nice to get up late, and I always stay in bed until about 10:30. Then I usually go shopping with a friend. In Mexico, stores are sometimes closed on Sundays, so Saturday is the only day for shopping. We don't always buy something, but we have fun just looking.

I often have lunch with my mother and my brother. It's great because my mom is a really good cook — she always makes things we like, and my brother and I have time to talk about our week. After lunch, I sometimes study from about 4:00 to 6:00, especially if I have exams.

In the evening, I usually go out with my friends. We often go to the movies, and after that, we have a pizza or tacos. I never go to bed before 1:00, or sometimes later.

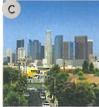


4 POSTING ON SOCIAL MEDIA

a Nick is on vacation in Los Angeles. He posts news and photos from his vacation. Read his posts and match them to the photos.











Thur June 8

Do you like my new boots? They're from The Grove, and I'm wearing them for the first time. I love the fashion in California!

2 Thur June 8

I'm sitting at a café in Venice Beach and watching the amazing street artists. It's cold for June, but it's sunny! Venice Beach is full of tourists (like me!). 2:15 pm

3 Fri June 9

Beautiful weather today – the sun's shining! I'm on a bus tour of the Hollywood Hills – great views of downtown LA. 10:30 am

Fri June 9

I'm having a typical Californian lunch at an outdoor café - a salad and a smoothie. It's OK, but I prefer a hamburger and French fries! 1:20 pm

5 Fri June 9

> I'm at Dodger Stadium with tickets for the Dodgers -Giants game! I usually root for the Cubs, but I'm rooting for the Dodgers today! 7:15 pm

 Imagine you are on vacation in your country or abroad. Plan four posts or messages of about 30 words. Think about the following:

Where are you? What are you doing? Who are you with? What's the weather like?

- c Write your posts. Make sure they are about 30 words.
- d Check your posts. Make sure you use the simple present and present continuous correctly.

5 AN INFORMAL EMAIL

a Read the email. Who do you think Stefan is?

From: Carmen <carmensanchez@hotmail.com>
To: Stefan <stefan7541200@moebius.ch>
Subject: Hi from Buenos Aires

Hi Stefan.

My name's Carmen. I'm 19, and I'm from Mendoza, in Argentina. I'm a receptionist at a hotel. I'm studing English becuse I need it for my job.

I live with my parents and my brother and sister. My father is an arkitect and my mother works in a clothing store. My brother and sister are at school.

I don't have very much free time because I work six days a week. I usualy go shoping on my day off. In the evening, I like seeing freinds or listening to music. I really like hip hop. What kind of music do you like?

Please write soon.

Best wishes, Carmen

- b Cover the email. What personal information can you remember about Carmen? What does she say about her family and her free time? Look at the email again and check.
- c Look at the six <u>underlined</u> spelling mistakes. Can you spell the words correctly?
- d Plan a similar email. Make notes about the following information.

Paragraph 1: Your name, age, and where you are from. Say what you do, and why you are studying English.

Paragraph 2: Who you live with. Say something about them.

Paragraph 3: What you like doing in your free time.

Informal emails

Beginning: Hi + name

Middle: Use contractions, e.g., I'm from Mendoza.

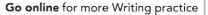
End: Best wishes or Love (for a good friend)

- e Write your email. Use your notes and the language in the information box.
- f Check your email for spelling mistakes.

To practice your English, you can write to a friend in another country. You can find "pen pal" websites on the internet.

p.51





6 DESCRIBING YOUR HOME

- a Read the website and the description of an apartment for rent. Imagine you want to go on vacation to Hermosa Beach, California for a week. Would you like to stay there?
- b Number the information in the order it comes in the description.
 - Details about some of the rooms
 - How far it is from downtown Los Angeles
 - What floor the apartment is on
 - What rooms there are
 - What places or services there are nearby
 - What you can see from the apartment
 - Where it is
- c What adjectives does the writer use to describe...?
 - 1 the street 2 the kitchen 3 the view
 - 4 the community swimming pool



There's a sofa bed in the study, **so** you can use it as an extra bedroom.

We can use so to express a result or consequence, e.g.,

I was very tired, **so** I went to bed early. My office is near my house, **so** I walk to work.

- d Read the information box. Then plan a description of your house or apartment for the website. Make notes on the topics in **b**.
- e Write your description.
- f Check your description. Make sure you use there is / there are correctly. Show it to another student. Can you find one thing in your partner's description that is the same as yours?
- **p.65**



Summary

My apartment is on a quiet street in Hermosa Beach, California. It's on the second floor. There are two bedrooms, two bathrooms, a living room, a study, and a light, pretty kitchen. The kitchen is small, but it has a stove, a refrigerator, and a dishwasher. There's a sofa bed in the study, so you can use it as an extra bedroom. The bedrooms have a great view of the Pacific Ocean — you can see the sun set over the ocean in the evening. There isn't a yard, but the apartment building has a beautiful community swimming pool. The apartment is a five-minute walk from stores, restaurants, and a bus stop. It's also about a 30-minute car ride from downtown Los Angeles.



A FORMAL EMAIL

Read the advertisement and Hannah's email, and complete it with the words in the list.

about are confirm Dear double from hope Sincerely would

You booked a room last night at The Bay House. Plan a similar email. Think about these things.

Are you traveling with someone or alone? What kind of room(s) did you book? How many nights did you book for? Which dates? How are you planning to get there? When are you planning to arrive? Do you want to have dinner there? When?

0	Formal emails (e.g., to a hotel, a language school, etc.)
	Beginning:
	Dear Mr. / Mrs. / Ms (+ last name),
	Dear Sir or Madam (if you don't know the person's name),
	Use a comma (,) not a colon (:), e.g., Dear Mr. Brown, NOT Dear Mr. Brown:
	Middle: Don't use contractions, e.g., I would like to make a reservation NOT 1'd like to
	End: Sincerely,

Read the information box. Then write your email. Check that there aren't any contractions.

(your first name + last name)





Places to stay in Bath

Listening

1.15

1 A A turkey and cheese sandwich, please. B That's \$9.15.

2 A So, Anna, your classes are on Tuesday and Thursday mornings.

B What? Sorry?

3 The JetBlue flight to Burbank is now boarding at gate number 5.

4 A Where to?

B 16 Manchester Road, please.

5 A Here's your key. Room 12.

B Thank you.

6 A Here we are.

B Oh, no! It's closed.

A Look, it says "Closed on Monday"!

1 A Hi. Where are you from?

B We're from Fortaleza, in Brazil.

A OK. Good luck to the Brazilian team!

B Thank you!

2 A Hello. I'm Mike from USA News. Where are you from?

B Ím from Australia.

A Are you from Sydney?

B No, I'm not. I'm from Cairns.

A Where's Cairns? Is it near Sydney?

B No, it isn't. It's north. Am I on TV?

A Yes, you are.

B Wow!

3 A Hi. Are you American?

B No, we aren't. We're from Japan.

A Oh, sorry!

1.30

1 Announcer The 6:12 train to Poughkeepsie, making stops at Harlem, Beacon, New Hamburg, and Poughkeepsie is departing from track 30.

A That's our train. Track 30. Come on.

B OK. Let's go.

2 A Excuse me! How far is it to Austin?

B It's about 40 miles.

A Thanks a lot.

3 A Just one more set. Come on!

B 15-love

A Great serve!

4 A Will all passengers on Delta flight 1182 to Portland please go to gate 16 immediately.

B Gate 16. Is that our flight?

C No, it's to Portland, Maine, not Portland, Oregon.

5 A How much for this?

B Two slices of pizza, a salad, and a soda. That's \$17.

6 A What's your address?

B It's 80 Park Street.

A Sorry?

B 80, eight-oh. Park Street.

7 A OK, be quiet, please. Open your books to page 90.

B What page?

A Page 90.

Mark Hello? Hello? Can you hear me? Micaela Hi, yes, fine. I can hear you. Mark Good! I'm Mark, from English House Language School.

Micaela Hi, Mark.

Mark OK, can I check your information first?

Micaela Yes, of course.

Mark What's your first name?

Micaela Micaela.

Mark How do you spell it?

Micaela M-I-Ć-A-E-L-A.

Mark M-I-C-A-E-L-A - is that right?

Micaela Yes, that's right.

Mark And what's your last name?

Micaela Vazquez.

Mark Vazquez. Is that V-A-S...?

Micaela No, it's V-A-Z-Q-U-E-Z.

Mark V-A-Z-Q-U-E-Z. OK. And how old are you?

Micaela I'm 20.

Mark Where are you from?

Micaela I'm from Argentina.

Mark Where in Argentina?

Micaela From Buenos Aires.

Mark What's your address?

Micaela It's Florida one six five. Mark Florida's the street? Number one six five?

Mark What's your zip code?

Micaela Sorry?

Mark You know, the zip code?

Micaela Ah yes. It's C- one zero zero five

Mark C- one zero zero five A-A-C. Great. What's your email address?

Micaela It's m dot vazquez at mail dot com.

Mark And what's your phone number?

Micaela My cell phone or my home phone, my

Mark Both - cell and landline.

Micaela My cell is one one, one five, eight nine three four, five five six eight.

Mark One one, one five, eight nine three four, five five six eight. Great. And your landline?

Micaela Five four, one one, six zero two three, five four four two.

Mark Five four, one one, six zero two three, five four four two.

Micaela That's right.

Mark OK, that's great. So, what do you do, Micaela?

Micaela I'm in college. I'm a nursing student...

Snoop Dogg isn't his real name. His real name is Calvin Cordozar Broadus. He's American. Shakira is her real name. Her full name is Shakira

1 On my desk, I have my computer. I have some pens and pieces of paper. I have a lamp, and a photo of my family. Oh, and a phone. It's very neat.

Isabel Mebarak Ripoll. She's from Colombia.

2 In my study, I have a desk, a table, and two chairs. I have a lot of books and a big dictionary on the desk – it isn't very neat! And I have a map of the world on the wall.

3 I have a lot of things in my bag. I have my phone. I have the charger for my phone. I have my sunglasses, tissues. And I have my house keys and my change purse.

Lisa The Highland Hotel's 20 miles from here. Let's go there.

John 20 miles? No problem.

Lisa John! Slow down!

John Oh no!...Here she comes.

Police Officer Good evening. Turn off the engine, please. Thank you.

John What's the problem, officer?

Police Officer The problem? Well, 70 miles an hour is the problem. That's very, very fast. The speed limit on this road is 50 miles an hour. Can I see your driver's license?

John 70? Oh. Uh, I'm very sorry, officer.

Police Officer Ah, what a beautiful baby! What's his name?

Lisa Henry. He's very tired, officer. And it's 20 miles to our hotel.

Police Officer Well...OK...go to your hotel. But please slow down.

John Yes - thank you, officer.

Police Officer Goodbye, sir, ma'am. Goodbye, Henry!



Part 1

Host And now your favorite radio show, His

Host Good evening and welcome again to the jobs quiz His Job, Her Job. And our team tonight is David, a teacher...

David Hello.

Host Kate, who's unemployed...

Kate Hi.

Host ...and Lorna, who's a writer.

Lorna Good evening.

Host And our first couple tonight is...

Alex Alex.

Host And? Sue Sue.

Host Welcome to the show, Alex and Sue. OK team, you have one minute to ask Alex questions about his job and then one minute to ask Sue about her job, starting now. Let's have your first question for Alex.

David Hi, Alex. Do you work in an office?

Alex No, I don't.

Lorna Do you work in the evening?

Alex It depends. Yes, sometimes. Kate Do you make things?

Alex No, I don't.

Lorna Do you wear a uniform or special clothes?

Alex Uh, yes – I wear special clothes.

Kate Do you drive for your job?

Alex No, I don't.

Lorna Do you work on a team?

Alex Yes, I do. With ten other people.

Kate Do you have any special qualifications? Alex Qualifications? No, I don't.

David Do you speak foreign languages?

Alex No, only English. Host You only have time for one more question, team...

David Uh, do you travel?

Alex Yes, I do. On weekends. Well, not every weekend...

Host Your time's up.

3.15

Part 2

Host Now team, you have a minute to ask Sue about her job.

Kate Hello, Sue. Do you work outside?



Sue It depends. Outside and inside. **Lorna** Do you work on the weekend?

Sue Yes, I do.

David Do you work with the public?

Sue No, I don't.

Kate Do you get vacation time?
Sue No, I don't. I never get vacation time.

Kate Do you work at night?

Sue Sometimes. It depends.

Lorna Do you earn a lot of money?

Sue No, nothing! I don't have a salary.

David Do you like your job? Sue Yes, I do! I love it.

Host That's time. OK, team...

3.17

Becca He's beautiful. Is he a fox terrier? Sorry, he or she?

Dave She. Yes, she's a fox terrier. Her name's Dolly. And your dog?

Becca He's a Labrador.

Dave What's his name?

Becca Barry. Barry come here!

Dave Dolly. Here. Stop it.

Becca I think Barry likes her.

Dave Yes! Sorry, I'm Dave. What's your name?

Becca Becca. Hi.

Dave Nice to meet you, Becca! How old is Barry?

Becca Uh...He's, uh, two. And Dolly?

Dave Uh...The same. Hey, Dolly! Come back!

3.20

Becca Hi, Dave.

Dave Hi, Becca. Hi, Barry! So nice to see you both again!

Becca What a cute restaurant. I really like it. And look at all the dogs.

Dave I know, right! It has good food, too...for people and for dogs!

Becca Mmm. Sit Barry. Good boy. Uh, where's Dolly?

Dave She isn't here. Uh, Becca, I need to tell you something. Dolly isn't my dog. She's my friend's dog. I sometimes help and take her for a walk.

Becca You don't have a dog?

Dave No. Uh...I don't like dogs very much, And my apartment's so small. I'm so sorry. I know you love dogs.

Becca Phew! Don't worry! Barry isn't my dog either! He's my sister's dog. I like dogs, but... in fact...I have two cats. How do you feel about cats?

Dave I love cats – in fact, I prefer cats to dogs! Let's sit down and order lunch.

Becca Great! So, what's good here?

Dave The spaghetti carbonara is fantastic—and so is the homemade chocolate ice cream!

Becca Yum! All for me this time!

D 4.6

Anna Who's that?

Grace That's my boyfriend, Mark.

Anna He's good-looking. How old is he?

Grace 26.

Anna What does he do?

Grace He's a medical student. He finishes this year – I hope!

Anna Where does he study?

Grace At Indiana University School of Medicine.

Anna Does he like it?

Grace Yes, he loves it. And this is my sister Celia and her kids.

Anna Ah. She looks like you.

Grace Yes, she does.

Anna How old is she?

Grace She's 35.

Anna How old are the kids?

Grace Carlos, the little one, is two, and Daniel, the older one's, uh, six, I think. They live in Chile, so I don't see them very often.

Anna Is that another sister?

Grace No, she's my sister-in-law, Miriam. She's married to my brother Tim.

Anna What does Tim do?

Grace He's a lawyer, and Miriam's a teacher.

Anna How old are their children?

Grace Alex is four, and Helen's 13 months now.

Anna They're so cute!...So how about you and
Mark? When's the wedding?

Grace Wedding! No, thanks! I'm too young!

3 4.11

Interviewer What time do you get up in the morning?

Darius I get up at about seven-thirty.

Interviewer How do you feel when you get up?
Darius I know seven-thirty isn't that early, but
it's early for me, and I usually feel tired and in
a little bit of a bad mood.

Interviewer Do you have breakfast?

Darius Absolutely. I have cereal and milk, and some bread with honey or jam. I love honey!

Interviewer Do you walk to school?

Darius No, it's very far away. I go to school by Tube. I usually get to school about eight twenty. I like to be early.

Interviewer What time does your first class start?

Darius It starts at nine. I have four or sometimes five classes before lunch.

Interviewer Where do you have lunch?

Darius I usually have lunch at school at about one o'clock. I know people usually say that school food is terrible, but actually at my school the food is really good.

Interviewer And after lunch?

Darius We start classes again at 1:45. I usually have two or three classes in the afternoon.

Interviewer What time does school finish?

Darius At 4:15. But I don't go home then. I stay at school to do extra things – I study in the library or play music.

Interviewer What kind of music?

Darius Well, I sing in the school choir on Tuesdays, and on Thursdays, I play percussion in the orchestra. I love music – it's my main hobby.

Interviewer So what time do you usually get home?

Darius At about six o'clock.

Interviewer What's the first thing you do?

Darius | take a shower, and then | have dinner.

And then, of course, homework.

Interviewer How much homework do you have?

Darius Two or three hours. It's my last year at school and I have my A levels this summer. I need to do really well to get into a good university.

Interviewer Do you watch TV in the evening?

Darius No, never. I don't have time. When I finish my homework, I practice the piano and then I go to bed.

Interviewer What time do you go to bed?

Darius At about ten-thirty. I'm usually so tired
I go to sleep right away. All I really do these
days is study, eat, and sleep.

Interviewer So no social media or anything like that?

Darius Well...I do spend a little bit of time on Facebook. But not much, I promise!

3 5.2

Amy 12:30. In a long line outside the Conference Center in Portland.

Guard Remember, you need ID. You can't come in if you don't have ID.

Amy Here's my passport.

Guard Thanks "Amy Jones." Yup, that's you! OK, come in. Next, please!

Amy 12:45. In the waiting area with 350 other singers!

Organizer 1 OK Amy, sit here and wait until we call your name.

Amy Thanks.

Organizer 1 Are you here for the audition, too? Friend No, I'm not. I'm Amy's friend. Can I wait with her?

Organizer 1 Yeah, sure.

Friend Thanks.

Amy Let's sit here. I'm so nervous...

Organizer 1 Mike Smith, Pat Jones, Tony Cash, come with me. This way.

Amy Good luck!

Amy 4:00. Three hours later! My turn at last!
Organizer 2 Amy Jones, Naomi Williams, Justin
Elliot? Can you come with me, please? It's your

Amy Oh my goodness! It's my turn.

Friend Good luck, Amy! You can do it!

Amy Excuse me. Can my friend come with me?

Organizer 2 No, she can't. She can wait there. And you can't take your bag into the audition. Leave it with your friend.

Amy OK.

Amy 4:15. In the audition, with three judges. Really nervous!

Judge Amy...Jones? What's your song?

Amy One Day.

Judge We can't hear you. Is the microphone on? **Amy** Sorry...Sorry. Can you hear me now?

Judge Yes, that's fine.

Amy My song's One Day.

Judge Can you start, please?

Amy Oh no! I can't remember the first line.

Judge Take your time.

Amy I'm OK now!

D 5 11

Woman Oh, hi Paul. Jack, it's Paul, from next door. Come in! We're having a party. It's my birthday.

Paul Oh! Uh, Happy Birthday!

Woman Thanks. Would you like a drink?
Paul Actually, I want to talk to you about the

Woman Sorry?

Paul The NOISE. It's very noisy.

Woman Yes. We're having a great time! Do you

want a soda? Or a glass of iced tea?

Paul Oh, well, yes, OK. A soda, please.

Woman Here you are. Come and meet our friends. Hey, everyone, say hello to Paul. He's our neighbor.

All Hello, Paul.

Paul Hello.

Woman Do you want to dance, Paul?

PD E 15

A Good afternoon. How can I help you?

B Hello. I have a reservation for two nights.

A Your name?

A Tour II

A Carter. Here we are. Can you sign here, please?...Here's your key card. You're in room 212, on the second floor.

CD 5 16

1 A Can I help you?

B Yes, I'd like a latte, please.

A Regular or large?

B Large, please.

A To have here or to go?



- B To have here.
- A That's \$3.40, please.
- B Here you are. \$3.40.
- 2 A Where are my car keys? I can't find them
 - B | don't know. In your jacket pocket?
 - A No, they aren't there.
 - B How about on the hall table?

 - B Are you sure you don't have them?
 - A Absolutely sure.
 - B Look in the living room.
- 3 A Oh no, it's 20 minutes late.
 - B Is there a waiting room somewhere? It's really cold here on the platform.
 - A No, I don't think so.
- B What time is it now?
- A 6:15. We can take the 6:20, but it's a slow
- B No, let's wait then.
- 4 OK, come on everyone, out here. Stand together under the tree. OK! Are you ready? Carole, I can't see you. Can you stand next to Jim? OK, ready? Say cheese!
- 5 A ... So, Mr. Bartlett, do you have any questions you'd like to ask?
 - B Uh, yes. On the website, it says the hours are from 10 to 6. What about the
 - A The hours are 10 to 6 on the weekends too, but you get paid overtime on Sundays Saturday counts as a normal day. But if you work on a Saturday, you have a weekday free. The contract clearly says five days a week, with possibilities of overtime.
 - B Oh right.

The best (or worst) thing about the weather in Chicago is that it's always changing. It can be very hot or very cold. In the summer, it's mostly sunny and sometimes cloudy, with temperatures of about 84 degrees. And of course, sometimes

In the winter, the temperature is usually between 29 and 14 degrees. It can be below freezing (32 degrees) for weeks at a time. Brrr! It snows about 38 inches a year.

In the spring and the fall, the weather is very changeable. You can have all four seasons in one week. It can be cold and snowing on Monday, cool and foggy on Tuesday, and warm and sunny on Wednesday. I always tell tourists to bring a winter coat, gloves, sunglasses, sandals, and an umbrella when they visit Chicago in the spring and the fall—that way they are prepared for any kind of weather!

But one thing that isn't always true about Chicago is the wind. Even though Chicago's nickname is "The Windy City," it's not always windy there. In fact, Boston has more windy days a year than Chicago. Some people think Chicago's nickname is from politicians who talk too much!

0 6.5

Part 3 Walid walks for five days through the mountains. The sun shines, and at night it's very cold. Then one evening, he finds the palace. The prince welcomes him and gives him food and drink, and a comfortable bed. But Walid can't sleep. He's thinking about the 1,000 gold coins.

The next morning, he says to the prince, "I want to say thank you to you. Please have this silver ring. It's my mother's."

The prince is very happy. "This is a beautiful ring," he says. "Thank you. Let me give you something in return."
He gives Walid a box. "Don't open this until you get home," he says. "Be careful with it. It's very, very valuable."

Walid runs through the mountains, and after three days, he arrives home.

"Where's my silver ring?" shouts his mother. "Don't worry about your ring!" says Walid.
"Look at this!"

Hassan and their mother watch as he opens the box. Inside he finds...

1 A Hi, Kim. Do you want come to the theater with me this Saturday?

B Saturday? I can't - it's my brother's 21st birthday! We're having a big party at my parents' house.

A Oh, that sounds great! Have a wonderful time – and say "Happy Birthday" from me!

2 A Are you in the office next week?

B No, I'm on vacation.

A Where are you going?

B Australia

A Lucky you! When do you get back?

B On the 30th.

A Wow! That's a long vacation.

B Yeah, three weeks! I can't wait.

3 A You drink a lot of coffee!

B Yes, this is my fifth this morning. A It's not good for you, you know.

B I know, but I can't wake up without it.

4 A Where's the restaurant?

B It's not far. It's on the corner of Park Avenue and 53rd.

A Great. See you there at 7:30.

5 A Good morning. I'm here to see Maria Diaz. My name's Brian Sanders.

B Just a moment, sir, I'll call her...Hi, Maria. There's a Mr. Sanders here to see you...OK, sir. Could you sign in here? Great. You can go right up. She's on the sixth floor. The elevators are over there.

A Thank you.

D 7.1

This painting is a self-portrait by the Dutch painter Vincent van Gogh.

Van Gogh was born in the Netherlands on March 30th, 1853. His parents weren't poor - his father was a church minister, and his mother was an artist. Van Gogh's first job was in his uncle's company, selling paintings, but later he was a teacher, and finally a painter. We only really know what he looked like because of his many self-portraits. Only three photographs of him exist, and they are all from when he was young. This portrait is from his time in Arles in the South of France, in 1888, when he was 35. He was very poor, but he was happy because of the beautiful light and colors there. This portrait was a present for his friend, the painter Paul Gauguin. Gauguin and van Gogh were together in Arles for a month. Van Gogh was not strong mentally, and the relationship between them was difficult. After a big fight, van Gogh cut off his ear, and was in a mental hospital for some time. He died on July 29th, 1890. He was only 37 years old. His paintings weren't popular during his lifetime, and he was never rich or famous. But today, people think that Vincent van Gogh is one of the greatest painters in the world, and his paintings, like Sunflowers and The Starry Night, sell for millions of dollars.

Edward Gamson lives in Washington, D.C. A few years ago, he and his friend Lowell decided to go on vacation to Granada in Spain. Edward wanted to visit the Alhambra, a famous palace. They researched flights online and booked tickets for the two of them. Their tickets were expensive, but Edward decided to spend extra money on first-class seats. On the day of their flight, they arrived at Dulles Airport and parked their car in the long-term parking lot. Edward and Lowell

checked in for the first part of their trip. They traveled safely to London, changed planes at Heathrow Airport, and settled into their second flight. Twenty minutes into the flight, Lowell looked at Edward with surprise.

Lowell Edward, I think we're going west and not south to Granada.

Edward Hmm. Let's ask the flight attendant. Excuse me, why aren't we going south to Spain?

Flight Attendant Spain? We're not going to Spain. We're going to Grenada, the island in the Caribbean.

Edward The Caribbean? But I booked tickets to to Granada, Spain.

Flight Attendant Let me check your ticket. Oh, I see. I'm really sorry, but your ticket isn't for Granada, Spain. It's for Grenada, in the West

Edward No, it can't be.

Flight Attendant I'm very sorry, but it is. Look, it clearly says Grenada – it's spelled correctly.

Lowell I don't believe it. Edward, did you check

the airport when you booked?

Edward Well, no, I didn't. I was in vacation mode and I didn't think about it.

Lowell Ugh! What are we going to do?

Flight Attendant When we land, you need to book new tickets to fly from Grenada in the Caribbean to Granada in Spain.

Friend What was your best ever New Year's Eve? One you always remember?

Denisa Oh, definitely 2014, when I was in Rio. Friend Who were you with?

Denisa I was with my boyfriend Marcelo, who's Brazilian.

Friend Why was it so special?

Denisa Well, Brazil has special traditions for New Year's Eve, and they were all new for me. For example, it's a Brazilian tradition to wear white clothes for New Year's Eve because white is a symbol of peace, so I wore a beautiful white dress that Marcelo's mother bought me. I have a photo somewhere on my phone. Yes, here, look!

Friend How pretty. So what did you do? Denisa Uh, let me think. Well, first we had a typical New Year's Eve dinner with Marcelo's family. And then, I guess it was about ten, we got a bus to Copacabana.

Friend What was the atmosphere like there? Denisa Oh, it was amazing! The streets were already full of people. We went to a show at a place near the beach. It was great, and we danced the samba.

Friend Wow. Were you there at midnight? Denisa No, no. When we saw it was almost midnight, we went to the beach, and the typical countdown started, you know - ten, nine, eight...Happy New Year! Everywhere we heard the sound of people celebrating, and we watched the wonderful fireworks.

Friend It sounds great. What did people do when the fireworks finished?

Denisa Most people went to other parties, or they went home.

Friend And what about you?

Denisa We decided to go to a different beach, a beach called Praia do Arpoador, and we took our first swim of the new year. It was magical.

Then the detective questioned Barbara Travers. Detective What did you do after dinner yesterday evening?

Barbara After dinner? I played cards with Gordon, and then I went to bed.

Detective What time was that?

Barbara It was about eleven thirty. I remember, I looked at my watch.

Detective Did you hear anything in your father's room?

Barbara No. I didn't hear anything.

Detective Miss Travers, did you have any problems with your father?

Barbara No, I didn't have any problems with him at all. Daddy was a wonderful man and... a wonderful father. I'm sorry, Detective.

Detective Don't worry, Miss Travers. No more questions.

3 8.5

Next, the detective questioned Gordon Summers.

Detective What did you do after dinner, Gordon?

Gordon | played cards with Barbara. Then she went to bed.

Detective Did you go to bed then? Gordon No. I stayed in the living room, and I had a cup of tea. Then I went to bed.

Detective What time was that?

Gordon I don't remember exactly. I didn't look at the time

Detective Did you hear anything during the

Gordon No, I didn't. I was very tired. I slept very

Detective You and Mr. Travers were business partners, weren't you?

Gordon Yes, that's right.

Detective And it's a very good business, I understand.

Gordon Yes, Detective, it is.

Detective And now it's your business. Gordon Listen, Detective, I did not kill Jeremy. He was my partner, and he was my friend.

Finally, the detective questioned Claudia Pasquale.

Detective What did you do yesterday evening, after dinner?

Claudia | went to my room and I took a bath and I went to bed.

Detective What time was that?

Claudia About 11 o'clock.

Detective Did you hear anything?

Claudia Yes. I heard somebody go into Jeremy's room. It was about 12 o'clock.

Detective Who was it?

Claudia It was Amanda, his wife.

Detective Are you sure? Did you see her? Claudia Well, no, I didn't see her. But I'm sure it was Amanda.

Detective You were Mr. Travers's secretary, Claudia.

Claudia Yes, I was.

Detective Were you just his secretary?

Claudia What do you mean?

Detective Were you in love with Mr. Travers? Claudia No, I wasn't.

Detective The truth please, Claudia. Claudia Fine, Detective. Yes, I was in love with him, and he said he was in love with me. He said he wanted to leave his wife - Amanda – and marry me. I was stupid. I believed him. But he didn't leave her. He used me, Detective! I was very angry with him.

Detective Did you kill him?

Claudia No, Detective. I loved Jeremy.

Barbara Let's go upstairs. Follow me...Be careful. The ceiling is very low here.

Leo It's a very old house.

Barbara Yes, the house is 300 years old. My family lived here for nearly 80 years. There are six bedrooms. This was my father's bedroom.

Kim Is there heat in the house?

Barbara Yes, there is. Why do you ask? Are you cold?

Kim Yes, it's very cold in here.

Leo That's because we're from California.

Barbara Let's go and see the other bedrooms. Leo Yes, of course.

Leo Well, what do you think, Kim? I love it! Don't you?

Kim I'm not sure. There's something about the house I don't like.

Leo Kim, it's perfect for the kids. Think of the yard. And it's a real, authentic country house. What do you say?

Kim I guess so. If you're sure. Leo I am sure! Miss...uh, Barbara. We want it. We want to rent the house.

Barbara Excellent.

Leo When can we move in?

Barbara As soon as you like.

Leo Hello.

Waiter Good evening, sir, madam. What can I get you?

Kim How about a coffee? I'm still cold.

Waiter Yes, madam. And you, sir?

Leo You know, I'm cold, too. I'll also have a coffee, thanks.

Waiter Here you are!

Leo Well, here's to our new house!

Kim Yes!

Waiter You're new around here, aren't you?

Leo Yes, that's right.

Kim We just rented the big house on Darwin Road.

Waiter Which house? The Travers family house? Leo Yes.

Waiter Oh.

Leo Is something wrong?

Waiter Who showed you the house? Kim Barbara. The old lady who lived there

Waiter Ah, Barbara. Old Mr. Travers's daughter. Some people thought that she was the one who did it.

Kim The one who did what? What happened?

Waiter Didn't she tell you?

Kim Tell us what?

Waiter About the murder.

Leo & Kim Murder?

Waiter Yes, Mr. Travers was murdered in that house in 1965...in his bed.

Kim Oh, how horrible!

Waiter The man who killed Mr. Travers was Barbara's lover. The family never lived there again. They tried to sell the house, but nobody wanted to buy it. Not after a murder. That's why that house is always rented. Barbara never married, of course.

Leo Kim?

Kim Yes?

Leo Are you thinking what I'm thinking? Kim Yes - I don't want to live in a house where somebody was murdered. Come on. Let's go. Waiter Hey, hey, your coffee! You didn't drink your coffee...Ah, well.

3 8.19

1 We stayed at The Roosevelt Hollywood for two nights. It's a really nice place - a very elegant, very LA hotel. The service, atmosphere, and room were excellent, and we really enjoyed our stay. But we had a really strange experience. On the first night, we woke up at

3:30 in the morning. There was a strange noise outside our door, like someone softly playing a trumpet. To tell you the truth, we were a little bit frightened. Why would someone play the trumpet in the middle of the night? Then we thought that it was probably another guest in the hall, and maybe they were listening to music on their cell phone or something, and we went back to sleep. But on the second night, the same exact thing happened. So we just thought, strange, maybe it's because it's an old hotel and the walls are thin. But when we got home, we told the story to a friend, and he told us that The Roosevelt Hollywood is haunted. We looked on the internet, and we read that people say that room 924 has a ghost! And our room was 922, the next room! We sent an email to The Roosevelt Hollywood and told them about it, and they sent us some really interesting information about the ghost stories. We'd really like to stay in this fantastic hotel again, but maybe not in room 924!

I stayed at The Roosevelt Hollywood in May of last year with my husband. It's a beautiful hotel, with a great location. It's right on Hollywood Boulevard. We were in a room on the eighth floor. We knew that people said there were ghosts, and we knew about room 924, but we weren't worried at all. We had a nice meal at a nearby restaurant and then we went to bed. But in the middle of the night - about 3:00 in the morning - we suddenly woke up and we could hear loud noises from the room above us. They were really loud noises - like people were dropping their heavy suitcases on the floor. Anyway, after two or three minutes, the noises stopped and we went back to sleep. There weren't any more strange noises, and we slept for the rest of the night. The next morning, we went to reception and said, "We slept very poorly last night - the people in the room above us made so much noise." The man at reception asked for our room number and said, "Let me check." He looked on the computer and he said, "The room above you is empty." So I said, "Are you sure?" And he said, "Yes. The room above yours is room 924. There wasn't anybody in that room last night." We checked out of the hotel the same morning. Never again!

Woman We need food for the weekend – can you go to the store on your way home this

Man OK, I guess so. What do we need? Woman Let's see. We need some coffee, we don't have any.

Man OK...coffee...

Woman And some milk. And some juice. Man Orange juice?

Woman Yeah. And maybe apple juice, too. Man OK. What else?

Woman Get a pineapple if they have them. Man One pineapple...

Woman And some oranges - four or five oranges - and some bananas. And I want to make a vegetable curry, so get some onions, some potatoes, some tomatoes...

Man Hold on, wait a minute...! Potatoes... Woman Yes, two or three big ones. Oh, and forget the tomatoes - we have some in the refrigerator. And a bottle of soda.

Man Coke? Pepsi?

Woman Any kind is fine. Oh, and some lettuce, I want to make a salad.

Man Some lettuce...Do we need any tomatoes? Woman No, I said no tomatoes!

Man Sorry, yes, you did. Is that everything? Woman Yes, I think so. And don't forget anything!



D 9.4

- 1 This is for my foodie friends. In case you thought lettuce was only for salads, here I'm cooking it in some butter with an onion. Then I add some mushrooms, chicken, fresh tomatoes, and some other things - not sure yet. Lettuce is also great in soups, or you can grill it and serve it with blue cheese.
- 2 We didn't feel like cooking last night, and besides, we didn't have any food in the house, so we decided to order some take-out salads from our wonderful local pizzeria. They were all very good, but my favorite was a chicken salad with carrots, tomatoes, peppers, lettuce, and some pieces of fried
- 3 Brunch Sunday afternoon at a restaurant in the East Village, called Timna. We had lots of different sharing plates. I loved everything, especially this dish called *shakshuka*, which is North African, and it's basically eggs in a tomato sauce, but the mixture of herbs and spices makes it taste great. And the bread we had to dip in the sauce was wonderful, too. Go there. Soon.
- 4 OK guys, this is it! Our Thanksgiving dinner which we had at 6:30 last night. All the usual things: turkey with cranberry sauce, mashed potatoes, sweet potatoes, lots of vegetables, and more...and more...Mom said, "why not go to a restaurant this year, maybe have seafood," but I said, "no – I want it homemade and traditional" – so she did it. Thanks, Mom. I now need to spend a few hours on the sofa before I even think about going to bed. So how was yours?

- 1 A Hi. I'd like a bottle of oil.
 - B Olive oil?
- A Yes, please.
- 2 A Can I help you?
 - B Yes, I'm looking for a package of rice.
 - A Ordinary rice, basmati, brown rice?
 - B Uh, basmati, please.
- 3 A Excuse me. I need a can of tomatoes, but I can't find them anywhere.
 - B They're over there, next to the pasta.
 - A Thanks.
- 4 A Hi. I want a box of chocolates a nice one. It's for my girlfriend's birthday.
- B How much do you want to spend?
- A Oh, not very much, I mean, nothing too expensive.
- 5 A A carton of juice, please.
 - B Apple juice? Orange juice?
 - A Uh, orange juice.
- B That's \$2.59, please.

Host Question 1. What is the population of the Canada? Is it approximately a, 27 million, b, 37 million, or c, 57 million?

Contestant I think it's b, 37 million.

Host B is the right answer! Question 2. How far is it from New York City to Los Angeles? Is it a, about 1,500 miles, b, about 2,500 miles, or c, about 3,100 miles?

Contestant About 3,100 miles.

Host Are you sure?

Contestant Yes. I'm sure.

Host C is the right answer! Question 3. How many politicians are there in the British Parliament? Is it a, 450, b, 650, or c, 750?

Contestant I think it's c, 750.

Host Final answer? I'm sorry, the right answer is b. There are 650 politicians in the British Parliament.

Host Good evening. Welcome to Quiz Night. Our first contestant is Eddie from Washington, D.C. Hi, Eddie. Are you nervous?

Eddie No, not really. I think I'm, uh, ready.

Host Well, let's hope so. The rules are the same as always. I'm going to read you some sentences, and you have ten seconds to say if the sentence is true or false. If you get the first answer right, you win \$100. Then for each correct answer, you double your money, so if you get the second answer right, you win \$200, and for the third correct answer, you win \$400. For eight correct answers, you win \$12,800. But if you get an answer wrong, you lose all the money. Remember, you can also call a friend, so if you're not sure about one of the answers, you can call your friend to help you. Is that OK, Eddie?

Eddie Yeah, OK.

Host OK, Eddie, first question for \$100. A whale can make a louder noise than a lion. True or false?

Eddie A whale can make a louder noise than a lion. Uh, true.

Host Correct. Blue whales can make a sound of up to 188 decibels whereas a lion's roar is never more than 114 decibels. Ro-a-rrrr. Now, for \$200, World War I was shorter than World War II. True or false?

Eddie Uh, I think it's true.

Host Correct. It's true. World War I lasted four years, from 1914 to 1918, but World War II lasted six years, from 1939 to 1945. Next, for \$400, the American movie industry is bigger than the Indian movie industry.

Eddie I think it's false. You know, Bollywood and all that is huge. I think it's false.

Host Correct. The Indian movie industry is much bigger than the American one. It produces about 1,000 movies every year, which is double what Hollywood produces. In fact, the US isn't even the second country that makes the most movies, which is Nigeria. Next, for \$800, in July, Seattle is hotter than Sydney. True or false?

Eddie In July, Seattle is hotter than Sydney.

Host Correct. The average temperature in July in Seattle is 75 degrees Farhenheit, and in Sydney it's 62 degrees Farhenheit. Of course, Australia's in the southern hemisphere, so it's winter there. Next, for \$1,600, silver is heavier than gold. True or false?

Eddie Uh, true. No, uh, false.

Host Do you want to call a friend?

Eddie I think it's false. I remember from science class at school. Gold is heavier than silver.

Host Correct. Gold weighs about 10.16 ounces per cubic inch and silver weighs only 5.53 ounces. That means that gold is almost twice as heavy as silver. OK, for \$3,200, the mountain K2 is more difficult to climb than Mount Everest.

Eddie Uh, true.

Host Correct. 30% of the people who try to climb K2 die, usually on the way down, whereas only 5% of the people who try to climb Everest die. OK, Eddie, now for \$6,400, driving in Italy is more dangerous than driving in the US. True or false?

Eddie Uh, I think that's a trick question. We all think Italians drive really fast, but maybe they're good drivers. I think it's false.

Host Good job, Eddie! It may be hard to believe, but in fact, out of every 100,000

people, six people died because of car accidents in Italy, compared to approximately 12 in the US. And finally, the last question. Be very careful, Eddie. If you get it right, you win \$12,800, but if you get it wrong, you get nothing. Are you ready?

Eddie Yes, ready.

Host OK, for \$12,800, it's better to exercise in the morning than in the afternoon.

Eddie Uh...uh.

Host Quickly, Eddie, your time is almost up. Eddie I think it's false, but I'm not sure. I want to call a friend.

Host OK, Eddie. So, who do you want to call? Eddie Sandra.

Host Is she your girlfriend?

Eddie Yes, she is

Host OK, then. Hello, is this Sandra?

Sandra Yes, it is.

Host I'm calling from Quiz Night. Eddie needs some help. You have 30 seconds, Eddie. Here she is

Eddie Hi. Sandra?

Sandra Yes.

Eddie Listen. It's the last question. "It's better to exercise in the morning than in the afternoon." True or false? I think it's false.

Sandra Uh, I think it's true. I always see people running in the park in the morning...

Eddie Google it. Quickly. On your phone.

Sandra What do I put in?

Eddie That sentence and see what comes up! It's better to exercise in the morning than in the afternoon." Come on!

Sandra OK, I'm typing it. Oh sorry, I just got a message.

Eddie Hurry up, Sandra!

Host Time's up, I'm afraid. OK, Eddie. So, true or false?

Eddie Uh. True.

Host Final answer?

Eddie Final answer. True.

Host I'm sorry, Eddie, it's false. It's better to exercise in the afternoon, between 4:00 and 5:00. Eddie, you had \$6,400, but now you go home with...nothing.

Eddie Why did I call Sandra? Why didn't I call my friend Dave?

Interviewer Gunnar, can you give us a quick update on your trip?

Gunnar OK, so we left Istanbul 20 minutes late, at 1:30 in the morning – not a good start. But we arrived in Casablanca more or less on time. We visited the mosque at 4:30 in the morning. We couldn't go inside though - we just saw it from the outside! Then we went back to the airport and flew to Paris. When we arrived, we rushed outside and took some photos, and then went back in to a different terminal. It was really stressful, the most stressful part of the trip - but we got to the gate just in time for our flight to Punta Cana. When we got there, we went to a beach that was about 12 miles from the airport, and we relaxed there for a little bit, and then went back to the airport and got our flight to Caracas. And we arrived here at 10:00 at night, and we officially entered the country at 10:15. So - five continents in one day! We did it!

10.12

If you're thinking of taking a vacation or traveling somewhere nice, the planning can be complicated. The internet is full of reviews of hotels, restaurants, and attractions. There are so many different ways of traveling, and thousands of places to go. Where do you start? Why not follow these three simple steps to find the right vacation for you.

Step 1. Think about what you want to do on your vacation. The first thing people usually try to decide is where they want to go, but it's probably

better to start by thinking about what you want to do. Do you want to relax? Then think about how you relax. For example, do you like reading, or doing yoga, or do you like doing something more active? Do you want to go somewhere completely different? Do you want to visit an exciting new city, or see some scenery and animals that are different from where you live? Seeing something completely new is a great way to forget about your normal life. Do you want to go on an adventure? Perhaps you're dreaming about climbing Everest or living with an African tribe. You could use your vacation to make one of those dreams come true. Do you want to learn something new? Not everybody wants to sit in a classroom learning Spanish or be in a kitchen learning to cook when they're on vacation, but some people love it. And nowadays, you can take courses in many countries and experience a

different culture at the same time. So now, Step 2. Think about the people you're going to go with. Are they family or friends? Do they have children? What do they want to do? People have different needs and interests, and if you're all going to enjoy the vacation, you need to make sure you all want the same things. But if what you really want to do is to meet new people, maybe it would be better to travel alone. And finally, Step 3. Think about good vacations you had in the past. Why were they good? Maybe it was the people you were with. Maybe it was something you learned, or an experience you had. What can you repeat from those vacations? Of course, there are always other things you need to consider, like how much money you can spend, and how much time you can be away. But first, follow these three steps, and then you're ready to start thinking about where you want to go!

10.15 Part 2

Jane Well, I have a problem with my boyfriend. We argue all the time. I'm not sure that he loves me. I want to know if we're going to stay together.

Jim Please choose five cards, but don't look at them...Ah, this is a good card. This means you're going to be very lucky.

Jane But am I going to stay with my boyfriend? Jim Maybe...We need to look at the other cards first.

10.17

Part 4

Jim Now I can see everything clearly. You're going to leave your boyfriend and go away with the other man, with Jim...to another country. And very soon, you're going to get married

Jane Married? To Jim! But am I going to be happy with him?

Jim You're going to be very happy together. I'm

Jane Oh no, look at the time. I'm going to be late for work.

The first thing that I really noticed when I arrived here was how incredibly friendly the people are. The "ticos" - that's what they're called - are much friendlier than people from my home country. They always say buenos días to you, even if they don't know you. And if something's good, like a beautiful day or a good meal, they say pura vida, which I love. It literally means "pure life," but I think it really means "things are great," or something like that. One thing that can be difficult though, their sense of time is completely different from ours - they call it "tico time." If they have an appointment at, let's say, seven in the evening, they probably leave home

at seven oʻclock, so theyʻre always late. Luckily, my school works on what they call "British time," so classes start punctually!

Another thing that surprised me was the weather. I thought Costa Rica was hot and sunny all the time. That's true in the dry season, and the temperature's about 77 degrees all year round, but in the rainy season, especially in September and October, it rains really heavily for maybe two hours a day. Really amazing rain, nothing like at home

Everyone told me that the scenery was beautiful in Costa Rica, but it was even more beautiful than I expected. Incredible animals, birds, trees - and volcanoes. Some of them are active and smoke quietly, and then suddenly there's a big bang and they start erupting. I was very frightened the first time it happened.

What else? Uh, I thought that life here was going to be very cheap, but in fact, food is very expensive, especially imported food. The only thing that's cheap is fruit, vegetables, and coffee wonderful, wonderful coffee. And the fruit and vegetables are very different from what we have at home. One day, I went to a market and I didn't recognize any of the fruit.

I like San José. I don't feel that it's dangerous, but it probably is. A colleague of mine was in a taxi the other day, and the taxi driver robbed him of his money! And the roads are terrible, especially in the rain! But in general, I love it here.

A I What kind of phone do you have?

A I have an iPhone.

How old is it?

A Uh, about two years old.

How often do you change phones?

A Not very often, I would say. I like to, uh, I'm not particularly worried about having the latest phone. I just want one that works well. Uh, I usually keep my phone about four years - if I don't lose it, that is.

What do you use your phone for the most?

Probably the internet. And messaging. Things like Snapchat, Facebook Messenger.

So you don't use it much to actually talk to people?

A No, I don't.

I What other apps do you use a lot?

A I use the weather one a lot. And I have a couple of games I like playing. And Skype. I use Skype from time to time to talk to my brother because he lives in Toronto.

Do you have any unusual apps that you sometimes use?

A I have one to track the food that I eat, but I don't use it every day. And I have a photo-editing app.

B I What kind of phone do you have?

B An Android smartphone. A Samsung, uh, Galaxy, I think.

Is it new?

B About six months old.

How often do you change phones?

B About every two to three years.

What do you use it for the most?

Receiving phone calls from other people, or looking up things on the internet.

What apps do you have that you use a lot?

B An online banking app. I use that a lot. Email, of course. And the Kindle app, the e-reader.

Do you like reading on your phone?

B No, I prefer reading real books, paper books, but I always have my phone with me so there are lots of times like, on the bus or if I'm waiting for somebody, I can read a book on my phone.

Do you have any unusual apps that you sometimes use?

B Uh, I have an app so I can order a taxi from my local taxi company.

C I What kind of phone do you have?

C An iPhone.

I How often do you change your phone?

C When my contract lets me upgrade it, which is, I don't know, every two or three years.

What do you use your phone for the most?

C Uh, email, text messages, internet, and phone, I mean, talking. In that order.

What apps do you use a lot?

C Apart from mail and Google, you mean?

I Yes.

C Uh, Twitter, uh, CNN news, and various transportation apps for buying train tickets or seeing what time they are.

Do you have any unusual apps that you sometimes use?

C I have a "night sky" app. If it's a starry night, I sometimes use that. You point your phone at the sky and it tells you the names of the stars and planets and things.

A Yes, I have. I drive a lot for my job, several hours a day, and I like listening to books - it's much better than listening to the radio. I probably listen to a couple of books every week.

B Yes, I've seen Blade Runner at least ten times. It's a really great movie, I never get tired of it, I always notice something new.

C No, never. I've definitely fallen asleep watching TV, but never at the movies.

D Yes, I have. When I'm stressed, I sit on the couch with my blanket, turn on Netflix, and spend the evening watching my favorite TV show, Parks and Recreation. I can easily watch four or five episodes one after the other.

No, I haven't. It usually takes me a long time to finish a book, so I never read them again.

Yes, I bought the soundtrack of Catching Fire, you know, The Hunger Games, after I saw the movie. It has some amazing music: Coldplay, Imagine Dragons, Christina Aguilera.

Alison Let's go out for dinner next Saturday. We can celebrate the end of the semester.

Brett Good idea. Where?

Alison Let's try somewhere new, somewhere that we haven't been to before.

Brett Yeah, good idea.

Clare How about that Indian restaurant near the train station, Curry Up?

Joe Curry Up? I've been there. It wasn't very good. Clare OK. Joe says it's not great. What about Chinese then? Somebody told me The Great Wall is very good.

Alison Yeah, I haven't been there, but people say it's areat.

Joe The Great Wall? I've been there. I went there last week. It's good, but I don't really want to

Brett Well, there's a new Thai place, Thai-Chi. It opened just recently.

Joe Thai-Ćhi? I've been there, too. I went on Wednesday.

Alison Well, I don't know. Have you been to Mexican Wave?

Joe Mexican Wave? Yes, I have.

Alison When did you go there?

Joe Last month. I went for dinner with people from work.

Alison The Acropolis? That Greek place? Brett I'm sure Joe's been there!

Joe No, I haven't. I haven't been to The Acropolis. But it closed a few months ago.

Brett Oh, this is ridiculous!

Alison OK, Joe, here's the answer. You cook dinner for us!

? = question form

Am I

Are you

Are we

Are you

Are they

Is he / she / it

GRAMMAR BANK

X = negative

No.

short answer

vou aren't.

we aren't.

you aren't.

they aren't.

he / she / it isn't.

I'm not.

1A simple present verb be ±, subject pronouns

+ = affirmative form		1.4
full form	contraction	
l am a student.	I'm a student.	
You are my partner.	You're my partner.	
He is Matt.	He's Matt.	
She is Sally.	She's Sally.	
It is a salsa class.	It's a salsa class.	
We are students.	We're students.	
You are partners.	You're partners.	
They are teachers.	They're teachers.	

- In contractions '= a missing letter, e.g., 'm = am.
- We use contractions in conversation and in informal writing, e.g., an email to a friend.
- We always use a subject pronoun (you, he, etc.) with a verb. It's a school. NOT is a school.

They're teachers. NOT Are teachers.

- We always use capital I. With other pronouns we only use a capital letter when it's the first word in a sentence. He's Ben and I'm Sally. NOT i'm Sally.
- you = singular and plural.
- We use he for a man, she for a woman, and it for a thing.
- We use they for people and things.

= affirmative

lam.

short answer

you are.

we are.

you are.

they are.

he / she / it is.

1B simple present verb be **=** and **?**

I'm not American. 1.24 She isn't from London. They aren't Spanish. "Are you Turkish?" "Yes, I am." "Is she Russian?" "No, she isn't." "Are we in class 2?" "No, we aren't."

= negative form		
full form	contraction	
I am not You are not He / She / It is not We are not You are not They are not	I'm not You aren't He / She / It isn't We aren't You aren't They aren't	Canadian. Moroccan. American.

 In questions we put am, are, is before I, you, he, etc. Are you Brazilian? NOT You are Brazilian? Where are you from? NOT Where you are from?

Brazilian?

Turkish?

Thai?

· We don't use contractions in affirmative short answers. "Are you Turkish?" "Yes, I am." NOT "Yes, I'm."

Yes,

- We put not after the verb be to make negatives \(\opi \). I'm not Canadian.
- We can also contract are not and is not like this: You're not Canadian. She's not Spanish.

1C possessive adjectives

I'm Peruvian. My family is from Cusco. 1.43 You're in Class 1. This is your classroom. He's the director. His name is Michael. She's your teacher. Her name is Tina. It's a language school. Its name is English House. We're an international Our students are from South America and Asia. They're French students. Their names are Luc and Marie.

- We use possessive adjectives for people and things. My family is from Peru. My car is Japanese.
- his = of a man, her = of a woman, its = of a thing.
- their = of people or things.
- Possessive adjectives don't change with plural nouns. our students NOT ours students



Be careful with it's and its. it's = it is It's a school. It's American.

its = possessive Its name is English House. Its sign is red and yellow.

14

а	Complete with am, is, or are.	b Write the sent	ences with contraction	ons.
	I <u>am</u> Mike.	He is late.	He's late.	
	1 We from Manaus.	1 It is Friday.		
	2 He early.	2 They are at so	chool.	
	3 They teachers.	3 I am well.		
	4 Today Wednesday.	4 You are in my	class.	
	5 l sorry.	a \\//rita.tha.aanta		// TI
	6 lt a hotel.			onoun (I, They, etc.) and a contraction
	7 You in room 402.		nnah are students.	<u>They're</u> students.
	8 She a student.	1 John is in roo		in room 5.
	9 My name Carla.	2 Sam and I are		friends.
1	0 I in a taxi.	3 Julia is a teac		a teacher.
		4 The school is	in Oakland.	in Oakland.
		5 Nico and Ferr	nanda are in my class	in my class.
				© :
1B				
a	Write negative sentences.		c Complete	e the conversation. Use contraction
	She's Australian. She isn't Aus	stralian.	e.g., 'm, 's	s, if possible.
	1 I'm American.		A Hi. I <u>'m</u>	Mark.
	2 They're Brazilian.			lark. My name 1 Maria.
	3 It's in South America.			you Spanish, Maria?
				not. I ⁴ from Mexic
h				you from Mexico City?
b	Make questions and short answer			from Tijuana.
		can? ✓ Yes, I am.		 _ Tijuana near Mexico City?
		✓		It ⁹ north.
		x		you in class 1?
		x		in class 2.
	4 / he from Peru?	✓		
!	5 / you Mike Bell?	×		G p
1C				
a (Complete the sentences with a pos	sessive adjective.	b Circle the corre	ect word.
	My name's Gloria. I'm from Brazil.		Mark and Eric	are friends. They Their are in class 2.
1	The students are from Turkey	names are	1 She's a new st	udent. She / Her name's Ipek.
	Sabina and Ahmet.			teacher Canadian?
	She's in my class name			raya. I'm in <i>you / your</i> class.
	We're in class 2 teacher		4 Is she / her Ch	
4	New York City is famous for	$_{}$ yellow taxis.	5 Peter is a teac	her. He / His is from the United States.
	How do you spell last na		6 What's he / his	
	This is my teacher name			/ your friends from?
7	' I'm from London addres	ss is 31,	DOMEST MANAGEMENT OF THE STATE OF	We / Our names are Marc and Jacques
	Old Kent Road.			My last name is White.
8	Sit down and open book	s, please.	10 She / Her is fro	
	Laura is in my class desk		TO SHET HELISHO	on mexico city.
	window.			
10	We're from Dallas last n	ame is Walters.		



GRAMMAR BANK

2A singular and plural nouns

a / an, plurals

singular nouns	plural nouns	1 2.2
It's a book.	They're books.	
It's a watch.	They're watches.	
It's a dictionary.	They're dictionaries.	
It's an umbrella.	They're umbrellas.	
It's an ID card.	They're ID cards.	

- We use a / an with singular nouns.
- We use an with a noun beginning with a vowel (a, e, i, o, u).
- We use a with nouns beginning with u or eu when the sound = /yu/, e.g., a university, a euro.
- We don't use a / an with plural nouns. They're books. NOT They're a books.



Look at the board.

Answer the questions.

- We use the when we know which board, questions, etc. Look at the board. NOT Look at a board.
- · We use the with singular and plural nouns (the board, the questions).

regular plurals

singular	plural	spelling
a book a key	books keys	add -s
a watch a box	watches boxes	add -es after ch, sh, s, x
a country a dictionary	countries dictionaries	consonant + $y = y - ies$

- We add -s (or -es or -ies) to make plural nouns. It's a pen. They're pens.
- With two-word nouns, we add -s (or -es or -ies) to the second noun. credit card, credit cards NOT credits cards

irregular plurals

singular	plural
a man /mæn/ a woman /'womən/ a child /tʃaɪld/ a person /'pərsn/	men /mɛn/ women /wɪmən/ children /ˈtʃtldrən/ people /pipl/

2B adjectives

- 1 The White House is in Washington, D.C. 12.8 It's a beautiful picture. It's an old book.
- 2 They're blue jeans. We're new students.
- 3 He's strong. We aren't rich. Is your car new?
- 4 It's a very big city. We're really tired.

- 1 Adjectives go before a noun. It's a beautiful picture. NOT It's a picture beautiful.
- If an adjective begins with a vowel in an adjective + noun phrase, we use an. NOT It's a old house.
- 2 Adjectives don't change before a plural noun. They're blue jeans. NOT They're blues jeans.
- 3 We also use adjectives after the verb be. The word order is: ⊕ or ⊡: subject, be, adjective, e.g., My car's new. The computer isn't cheap. 1: be, subject, adjective, e.g., Is your car new? Is the computer cheap?
- 4 We often use very and really before adjectives.
 - a He's very (or really) tall.
 - b He's tall.
 - c He isn't very tall.







2C imperatives, let's

- 1 Open the door. Turn right. Don't worry. Don't stop. Be quiet, please. Please sit down.
- 2 Let's go home. Let's not stop.



O Can you...?

Use Can you + verb (base form) as a polite alternative to an imperative.

Open the window. → Can you open the window, please?

- 1 We use imperatives to tell somebody to do (or not do) something.
- Himperatives = verb (base form). imperatives = don't + verb (base form).
- We add please to be polite. Open the door, please.
- We often use be + adjective in imperatives, e.g., Be quiet., Be careful., etc.
- We don't use a pronoun with imperatives. Be quiet. NOT You be quiet.
- 2 We use Let's + verb (base form) to make suggestions. We use Let's not + verb (base form) to make negative suggestions.

8 A It's dark. I'm frightened.

B _____ frightened. I'm here with you.

2	A						
а	Complete	with a or a	n. Write the plural.	b V	Vrite sentenc	ces with It's or They're (and a or an if	necessary
	singula	r	plural		pen	It's a pen.	20
	-	ohoto	photos		buses	They're buses.	
	1 `	vindow		1	children		
	2 k	сеу		2	change purs	e	
	31	D card	Designation of the second	3	men		
	4 c	country		4	umbrella		
	5 v	vatch	(1000)		sunglasses		
	6e	exercise		6	scissors		
	7 p	person		7	charger		
	8 ε	email	-	8	dictionaries		
	9 b	oox	4	9	coin	<u></u>	
•	10 v	voman		10	egg		(-) p.1
	Circle the (He's a rid 1 It's a ver 2 Is Louis I 3 It's a wad 4 Is it an e 5 Is Vietnam 6 These quare very	y big house. French? / Is F tch expensive asy exercise? mese your gi ese? uestions are v difficults.	s a man rich. / It's a house very big	vatch. y? friend questions	ls 1 a 2 you 3 car 4 a 5 Are 6 eas 7 stro	he words in the correct order. Chinese he ? Is he Chinese? day very It's hot ur Australian Is teacher ? r fast isn't That very idea bad It's e students you good ? sy is English very ong My is brother really in slow is This a	
	8 My new are very	glasses are ve	ery good. / My news ((- p.16
	Complete imperative		from the list. Use a	+ or a –		b Complete with Let's or Let's not verb from the list.	and a
	be (x2) go	have ope	en read speak tal	ke watch	worry	do go (x2) open stop	
	A It's ho	t. B Open	the window.			take turn off watch	
			Don't worry. It's OK.			It's hot. <u>Let's open</u> the window.	
	1 A I'm bo	(21)				1 Come on, it's late.	
	В		a book.			2 It's 11:00 p.m	the TV
	2 A Me pu	edes dar una	fotocopia, por favor?	,		and go to bed.	
			ass. Please		Spanish.	3 This exercise is difficult.	
	3 A I'm tire				10 miles	it together.	
			to bed.			4 a taxi. They're	e very
4		show good?				expensive. The bus is fine.	62
			it.			5 There's a rest area.	and
,	A I'm hur	ngry.	1 - 1			have a coffee.	4 H
ć	A It's a d	angerous stre				6 It's very cold a DV home.	
_		ning.	careful.			nome.	
,	A It Stall	mg.					

3.5

3

GRAMMAR BANK

3A simple present ± and □

I speak English.
Americans like fast food.
My mother cooks great food.
I don't drink tea.
We don't live in a large city.
He doesn't play the guitar.

I work.

I don't work.

You work.

You don't work.

He / She / It works.

We work.

You work.

You work.

You work.

They work.

They don't work.

- We use the simple present for things that are generally true or are habits
- Contractions: don't = do not, doesn't = does not.
- To make negatives, we use don't / doesn't + verb (base form).
 He doesn't work. NOT He doesn't works.

I work / play / live. I watch / finish / go / do. I study. He works / plays / lives. She watches / finishes / goes / does. She studies.

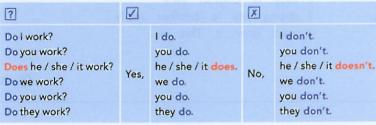
 The spelling rules for the he / she / it forms are the same as for regular plurals (see Grammar
 Bank 2A p.126).

Be careful with some he / she / it forms
I have he has /hæz/ NOT he haves
I go he goes /gouz/
I do he does /dʌz/

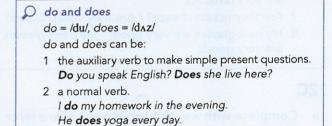
3B simple present ?

"Do you live in New York?" "No, we don't."

"Does he work at night?" "Yes, he does."



- We use do (or does with he, she, it) + base form to make questions.
- The word order for simple present questions is auxiliary (do, does), subject (I, you, he, she, etc.), base form (work, live, etc.).



3C word order in questions

Questions with be

Question word / phrase	be	€ 3.22
What Where How many students How	Is Are 's 's are are	she from Peru? your friends here? your dog's name? your office? in the class? you?
How old	is	she?

Remember the word order in questions with be.
 We put be before the subject.

Questions with other verbs

Question word / phrase	Auxiliary	Subject	Base form 3.23
Comment of Control of the Control of	Do Does	you your mother	live near here? know?
What	do	you	do?
Where	does	he	live?
How many children	do	you	have?
What kind of music	does	she	like?
How	do	you	spell your last name?

- The word order for simple present questions with do and does is auxiliary, subject, base form, e.g., Do you live here? OR question word, auxiliary, subject, base form, e.g., Where do you live?
- We often use question phrases beginning with What, e.g., What color...?, What time...?, etc.



2 4

SA					
a Chang	e the sentences.				e sentences with
My m	nom drinks tea. I <u>drink tea.</u>		а	+ or a - ve	erb.
1 Igot	to the movies. She	<u>`</u>	_	at have lies	ten play read spea
	ve in a house. He			tudy wear	
	nas two children. They		_	70 00 00 000	
4 Myd	ad doesn't like cold weather. I	•			<u>y</u> economics.
5 The s	stores close at 9:00. The supermarket				in an offic
6 Wed	lon't study French. My sister	·			books in Engl
7 Myh	usband does housework. I				Arabic very w
8 I wan	t a guitar. My son				games on my pho
9 Idon	't work on Saturdays. My friend				glass
10 The s	show finishes at 5:00. Our classes	·			to music in the
					fast for
			8	+ Julia	three childr
					G p
3B					
a Comple	ete the questions with do or does.	b Make questions usin	g a pı	ronoun and t	he bold verb.
Do y	you work with a computer?	A She works at nigl	nt. B	Does she wo	ork on the weekend?
	you have a dog?	A I don't play the g			
	you speak a foreign language?				tenn
	she play the guitar?	2 A She speaks foreig			
	he work or study?	3 A I don't eat fast fo			
	school children in your country	4 A They cook Italian			
	uniforms?	5 A Ali doesn't live in			
6	Jamie study Japanese?	6 A I want a new pho			
	your husband cook?	7 A My dad drives a f			
8	it rain a lot in your country?	8 A Sarah drinks a lot			
9	the students in this class speak	9 A We have two chile			
good	English?	10 A I don't listen to th			
10	Angela like her job?			on you	r phone?
26					
3C a Order t	the words to make questions.	b Complete the questi	ons ir	n the conver	sation.
	live where do ?	A Who <u>do you live</u> wit			
1.50	re do you live?	B I live with my parents			
	en how many do you have ?	A ¹ What		ır father	2
	esting is job your ?	B He's retired. My mot			•
	is his what car ?	-			2
	er your where work does ?	B In Bristol. She works			·
	with work computers do ?	A 3 you		13.5	her joh?
	of what do kind you	B Yes, she loves it. She			
	zines ?	A 4 What			
1000 mag 100 - 200	vhat does weekend he on	B He works in the yard,			
the '		A 5			o overmig.
8 stress	ed you your job are in ?	B Yes, fantastic. He ma	= = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = = =		25
	where does sister live ?	A 6 he a			
	now English you say that in ?	B Yes, he does. I help, t			HOUSE WOLK!
	1000 10 E	▲ What 7			?

B I make breakfast and I clean the bathrooms.

GRAMMAR BANK

34.14

4A possessive 's, Whose...?

1 He's Brad Pitt's brother. It's James's laptop.

1 4.2

- 2 It's my parents' car.
- 3 "Whose bag is this?" "It's Maria's."
- 4 The end of the movie is fantastic. I live near the city park.
- 1 We use a person + 's to talk about family and possessions. He's Brad Pitt's brother. NOT He's the brother of Brad Pitt.
- 2 With regular plural nouns we put the 'after the s. It's my parents' car. NOT It's my parent's car.
- · With irregular plural nouns, e.g., children, men, we use 's, e.g., the children's room, men's clothes.

- 3 We use Whose...? to ask about possessions. We can ask Whose bag is this? OR Whose is this bag? We can answer It's Maria's bag. OR It's Maria's.
- 4 We don't usually use a thing + 's, e.g., the end of the class NOT the class's end, the city park NOT the city's park.



Be careful with 's. It can be two things: Maria's mother - 's = of MariaMaria's Spanish - 's = is

Whose / Who's

Who's = Who is, e.g., "Who's that girl?" "She's my sister." Whose = of who, e.g., "Whose bag is this?" "It's Jack's." Whose and Who's are pronounced the same /huz/.

4B prepositions of time and place

Time

in	on	at	3 4.13
the morning the afternoon the evening the summer December 2018	Monday (morning) January 1 the weekend	three o'cle noon / mi lunchtime night	dnight

- We use in for parts of the day, seasons, months, and years.
- · We use on for days, dates, and the weekend.
- · We use at for times of the day and night.

Place and movement

- 1 He has lunch at work. He works in an office.
- 2 He goes to work at 8:00.
- 1 We use at and in for place.
- We use at + work, home, school.
- We use in + other places, e.g., a house, an office, a room, etc.
- We can use in or at with some public places, e.g., a restaurant, the movies, etc. On Saturdays, he usually has lunch in / at a restaurant.
- 2 We use to for movement or direction. She goes to the gym. NOT She goes at the gym. We don't use to before home. go home NOT go to home

4C position of adverbs, expressions of frequency

1 I always watch TV in the evening. Do you usually sleep eight hours a day? She sometimes plays sports. She doesn't often go to bed late.

2 They're hardly ever late. He isn't often stressed.

Are you usually in this classroom? 3 I have English classes twice a week. She doesn't work every day.

34.20

- 1 We use adverbs and expressions of frequency to say how often you do something. "How often do you cook?" "I cook every evening."
- Adverbs of frequency go <u>before</u> the main verb. In negative sentences, the adverb of frequency goes between don't / doesn't and the verb.
- 2 Adverbs of frequency go <u>after</u> be in ⊕ and ⊡ sentences. In 12 with be, the adverb of frequency goes after the subject.
- He's never stressed. NOT He isn't never stressed.
- 3 Expressions of frequency usually go at the end of a sentence or verb phrase.

4A

Look at the pictures. Answer the questions with a short sentence.



Whose laptop is this?	It's Ryan's laptop.
Whose cars are these?	

- 2 Whose wallet is this?
- 3 Whose magazines are these?
- 4 Whose watch is this?
- 5 Whose glasses are these?

b Circle the correct form.

Monica Cruz is Penelope's sister/ sister's Penelope.

- 1 It's my mother's birthday / my birthday's mother.
- 2 That's her parent's house / her parents' house.
- 3 I'm tired when I go home at the end of the day / the day's end.
- 4 Those are friends' my sister / my sister's friends.
- 5 The door of the classroom / The classroom's door is open.
- 6 Those are the students' desks / the desk's students.
- c Complete with Whose or Who's.

Whose	car is this?
Who's	the man with dark hair?
1	book is this?
2	phone is that?
3	your favorite singer?
4	Kevin's girlfriend?
5	bag is this?
6	their English teacher?

G	p	3	(

4B

Complete with at, in, or on.

<u>On</u>	_ Saturday
1	the evening
2	September 22nd
3	the summer

- 4 _____ 7:30 5 niaht
- 6 _____ Wednesday afternoon
- 7 _____ the weekend
- 8 _____ January
- 9 _____ 2020

b Complete with at, in, or to.

	We go to school by bus.
1	Sorry, John isn't here. He's work.
2	It's a beautiful day. Let's go the beach.
3	Sally's boyfriend works a factory.
4	My brother studies math New York University.
5	I go the gym on Tuesdays and Thursdays.
6	I work an office.
7	We live a modern apartment.
8	It's Monday. The children are school.
9	My father is a doctor. He works a hospital.
10	Jack isn't home. He's with a friend.

- 22
D.33

4C

a Put the adverb of frequency in the correct place in the sentence.

> They drive - they don't have a car. never They never drive – they don't have a car.

- 1 I walk to work. always
- 2 Do you wear glasses? usually
- 3 I'm bored. hardly ever
- 4 She does the housework. sometimes
- 5 We go to the movies. hardly ever
- 6 Why are you late? always
- 7 My girlfriend is stressed. never
- 8 Does it rain in December? often

b Order the words to make sentences.

always she at six up gets She always gets up at six.

- 1 for late never I am class
- 2 eat ever fast hardly we food
- 3 what work you usually time do finish ?
- 4 parents out night often my go don't at
- 5 always brother lunchtime is my hungry at
- 6 don't homework always our we do
- 7 you work usually to do drive ?
- 8 hardly teacher angry is our ever

G p.34



35.5

GRAMMAR BANK

5A can / can't

- 1 I can sing, but I can't dance.
- 2 I can come on Tuesday, but I can't come on Wednesday.
- 3 You can park here. You can't park there.
- 4 Can you help me? Can I open the window?
- can + base form has different meanings:
 - 1 I can (sing) = I know how to. I can't (dance) = I don't know how to.
 - 2 I can (come) = It's possible for me. I can't (come) = It's not possible for me.
 - 3 You can (park here) = It's OK. / It's permitted. You can't (park here) = It's not OK. / It's not permitted.
 - 4 Can you (help me)? = Please do it. Can I (open the window)? = Is it OK if I do it?

+										
	ou / He / She / Ve / They	can	swim come help.		I / You / It / We			can't	swim com- help	e.
?			+							
Can	I/you/ he/she/it/ we/they	swim? come? help?	Yes,	I / you he / sh we / th	ne/it/	can.	No,	I / you / he / she we / they		can't.

- can and can't are the same for all persons (I, you, he, etc.). NOT He cans.
- Contraction: can't = cannot.
- We don't use to after can. can swim. NOT I can to swim.

5B present continuous

They're having a party next door. Oh no! The baby's crying. It's raining.

- A What are you doing?
- B I'm waiting for my brother.
- **3**5.12
- + I'm I'm not You're You aren't He / She / It's He / She / It isn't having a party. We're We aren't

They're	T	hey ar	en't		
?				X	
Am I Are you Is he / she / it Are we Are they	having a party?	Yes,	I am. you are. he / she / it is. we are. they are.	No,	I'm not. you aren't. he / she / it isn't. we aren't. they aren't.

- We use the present continuous for things that are happening
- At the moment can mean around now. I'm reading a good book at the moment. (= not exactly now)
- We also use the present continuous with longer periods of time, e.g., today, this week, this month. The present continuous emphasizes that the action is temporary, not

I'm working at home this week because my daughter isn't very well.

base form	verb + -ing	spelling		
cook, read study, try	cooking, reading studying, trying	+ -ing		
dance, live shop, swim	dancing, living shopping, swimming	eing one vowel + one consonant: double consonant +-ing		

5C simple present or present continuous?

simple present present continuous **3**5.20 It always snows here in the Look! It's snowing. winter. What do you usually do at work? What are you doing now? My sister works in a bank. Today, she's working at home.

- What do you do? or What are you doing?
 - A What do you do? (= What's your job?)
 - B I'm a teacher.
 - A What are you doing? (= now, at the moment)
 - B I'm waiting for a friend.

- We use the simple present to say what we usually do, or things that are normally true.
- We often use the simple present with adverbs and expressions of frequency, e.g., always, often, once a week,
- We use the present continuous to say what is happening now or around now.
- We often use the present continuous with at the moment, today, this week.

5A

1 2 3 4	Complete the sentences with can or can't and the value of the sorry. I can't remember your name. (remember) 1 My girlfriend French, but not Spanish (speak) 2 you me? This box is very heavy. 3 you tonight. I have a lot of homework the window? It's cold in here. (a you your email address, please?)	form k c k (see) 2 Ple repeat	b Rewrite the sentences using the correct form of can or can't. I know how to play the piano. I can play the piano. 1 It's possible for her to meet me after work. She				
7	It says "No parking." We here. (park) Andy doesn't want to go to the beach. He (swim) Jecure Language Journ Lan	. My 4 ls arents. — 5 lt's	y boyfriend doesn't know how to ski. y boyfriend t OK if I use your car?I not permitted to take photos here. u	3 p.39			
_	What's he doing? He's cooking.	Hello, Tina. Whe I'm in Seattle. I'm 1	(visit) my parents	us. veek. do)? e)			
5C							
	ircle the correct form. A What do you cook / are you cooking? I'm really hungry. B Spaghetti. We can eat in ten minutes. A Hello. Is Martin home? B No, he isn't. He plays / He's playing soccer with his	continuous. Look. It <u>'s r.</u> 1 A Hi, Sarah B I	os in the simple present or present aining (rain) 1! What you here? for a friend. (wait)				
	 friends. A Do your parents live / Are your parents living near here? B Yes. They have / are having an apartment in the same building as me. A How often do you go / are you going to the hair stylict? 	hamburg B No, sorry meat. (no 3 A Listen! T	he neighbors				
4	 stylist? B About once a month. When my hair needs / is needing a cut. A Don't make so much noise! Your father sleeps / is sleeping! 	B They (have)	again. (have) a party every weekend! your boyfriend? acher. He at the local	(do)			

school. (work)

Go online to review the grammar for each lesson

B Is he OK? He doesn't usually sleep /

isn't usually sleeping in the afternoon.

p.42



GRAMMAR BANK

6A object pronouns

subject pronoun	object pronoun	€ 6.2
1	me	Can you help me?
you	you	I love you.
he	him	She doesn't love him.
she	her	He calls her every day.
it	it	I don't like it.
we	us	Wait for us!
they	them	Please help them.

- Pronouns take the place of nouns.
- We use subject pronouns when the noun is the subject of a verb (i.e., the person who does the action). John is a doctor. He lives in Houston.

- We use object pronouns when the noun is the object of a verb (i.e., the person who receives the action). Anna knows John. She sees him every week.
- Object pronouns go <u>after</u> the verb. I love you. NOT I you love.

Object pronouns after prepositions

We also use object pronouns after prepositions (with, to, from, etc.).

I'm in love with her.

NOT I'm in love with she.

Give this money to him.

NOT Give this money to he.

6B like + (verb + -ing)

<u>:</u>	love	shopping.	€ 6.15
C	l like	going to the movies.	
<u> </u>	I don't mind	getting up early.	
	l don't like	doing housework.	
7.	l hate	driving at night.	

base form	verb + -ing	spelling
cook, read study, try	cooking, reading studying, trying	+ -ing
dance, live	dancing, living	e -ing
shop, swim	shopping, swimming	one vowel + one consonant: double consonant +-ing

- We use verb + -ing after like, love, don't mind, and hate.
- We can also use verb + -ing after enjoy and prefer. I enjoy watching soccer on TV, but I prefer being there.

6C be or do?

be

- 1 Hi. I'm Jim. She isn't very friendly. Are you Thai?
- 2 I can't talk. I'm driving. They aren't working today. Is it raining?
- 1 We use be as a main verb.
- 2 We also use be to form the present continuous. Be here is an auxiliary verb.
- Remember to invert be and the subject to make questions. He's Spanish. Is he Spanish?

do / does

36.19

- 1 I'm doing my homework. Do you do your homework regularly?
- 2 Do you speak English? Where do they live? They don't have children. Does your sister have a car? Where does your father work? Alan doesn't like jazz.
- 1 We use do as a main verb.
- 2 We also use do / does to make questions and don't / doesn't to make negatives in the simple present. Do here is an auxiliary verb.

16.20

 Remember the word order for simple present questions: auxiliary, subject, base form OR question word, auxiliary, subject, base form (see Grammar Bank 3C p.128).

Z A	
A A	

a	Rewrite the sentences. Change thighlighted words to object pror	Complete the sentences with subject pronouns (<i>I</i> , <i>he</i> , etc.) or object pronouns (<i>me</i> , <i>him</i> , etc.).						(I, he, etc.) or	
	I call my mother once a week. Leall her once a week.		John is American. <u>He</u> lives in California, v argues with <u>them</u> a lot.						arents. <u>He</u>
	1 I can't find my wallet.		My mother has a big house in the country likes We often visit on Sundays – she invites for						
	2 She speaks to her father in Chines	e.	2		nave g	reat neig	ghbors	often he	lp with my
	3 He meets his friends after work.		3	Mark loves Ru	th, bu	she do	esn't like	He cal	ls every
	4 Can you help my friend and me?				s two	big dog	s tak	ces f	or a walk twice a
	5 Ryan is angry with his girlfriend.		5	day. I don't lik We often take	my gr	andfath	er some maç	gazines, but	t never
	6 My son doesn't like cats.			reads	пе wa	iches i v	all day and	never turns	G Off.
6E	В								
а	Write the -ing form of the verbs in t	the chart.	Γ	1 verb + -ing		work	working	1	
	come cook dance eat get have		-	verb ending	in e	live	living	coming	
	run sleep stop study swim wr			double cons			shopping		
	2 7 3 8				socc	er on TV	n an office /, novels s parents, a	tie	
									6 p.49
50	Put the phrases in the correct col	umn.	b	Complete th					form of <i>be</i> or
	doing your homework have a car hungry know those people like classical music listening to me live downtown stressed tired speak Russian waiting for a friend			A Do yo B Yes, but 1 A Where _ B She	u spea I <u>don'</u> i	k Germ pract Ger _ going	an? tice it very o nma going? to the gym.		
	Are you? Do you?			2 A B Yes, but	you I	p	lay very well		
	doing your homework			6 A	you	_ you cr ur boyfri ma u busy? do yo	rying? B Beend cook? king dinner ing our homour father? want to	ecause I right now. ework.	
				8 A B No.1			ng TV? g a video ga	ıme.	(- p.50

Go online to review the grammar for each lesson

7.9

37.2

GRAMMAR BANK

7A simple past of be: was / were

Vincent van Gogh was an artist.

Was he Dutch or French?

She wasn't in class yesterday.

The Beatles were famous in the 1960s.

Where were you last night? You weren't at home.

- We use was / were to talk about the past.
- We often use was / were with past time expressions, e.g., yesterday, last night, in 2014, etc.
- We use was / were with born. I was born in Canada.

	+				E selling gradent roos to t					
	I / He / She / It was there		ere.	I / He / She / It wasn't the						
	You / We / They were		were t	there.		ou / We / They	weren't there.			
	?						X			
	Was	I/he/sh	e / it	/it		Yes, I was.	No, I wasn't.			
	Were	you / we /	they famous?			Yes, you were.	No, you weren't.			

7B simple past: regular verbs

- 1 I booked the flights yesterday. We arrived at the airport at 10:00 this morning.
- 2 When I was young, I watched TV every night. I worked as a waiter every weekend when I was in college.
- We use the simple past for:
 - 1 finished actions that happened once in the past.
 - 2 finished actions that happened more than once in the past.

+									
I / You / He / She / It / We / They worked ye		esterday. I / You / H It / We / T				didn't work yesterday.			
?	?					×			
Did	l/you/ he/she/it/ we/they	work yesterday?	Yes,	he	you / / she / it / / they	did.	No,	1/you/ he/she/it/ we/they	didn't.

- Contraction: didn't = did not.
- Regular verbs in the past # end in -ed, e.g., worked, lived, played.
- The simple past is the same for all persons (I, you, she, etc.).
- We use did / didn't + base form for simple past 2 and . Did is the past of do.

base form	past	spelling
watch play	watched played	add -ed
arrive	arrived	add -d
study	studied	consonant + y: y -ied
stop	stopped	one vowel + one consonant; double consonant + -ed

7C simple past: irregular verbs

I went to Iceland in December. I didn't go to New York. 37.15 Did you go to a party? Who did you go with?

	base form	past +	past _
	buy	bought	didn't buy
	come	came	didn't come
	feel	felt	didn't feel
	find	found	didn't find
	get	got	didn't get
	go	went	didn't go
	have	had	didn't have
	know	knew	didn't know
	put on	put on	didn't put on
	say	said	didn't say
	take	took	didn't take
	think	thought	didn't think
	wear	wore	didn't wear
1			

- Some verbs are irregular in the past

 and change their form, e.g., go → went, have → had.
- I bought a bag last night.
- We use the base form after did / didn't. Did you go out last night? NOT Did you went ...?
- Remember the word order in questions: auxiliary, subject, base form, e.g., Did you go out last night? or question word, auxiliary, subject, base form, e.g., Where did you go? Look at the list of irregular verbs on p.165.

O can / could The simple past of can is could. We add not to make negatives and reverse the subject and verb to make questions. H We could see the whole city from the plane. □ I couldn't see him. NOT I didn't can see him. ? Could you wear jeans when you were at school?



7A

3	Rewrite the sentences	in the simple past.		b C	omplet	e the conversation	with was, wasn't,
1	simple present My father's at work. 1 She's at home today. 2 Where are you now? 3 I'm in Tokyo. 4 Is it hot today? 5 It isn't open now. 6 They aren't in the office 7 We're in Lima now. 8 They're tired. 9 We aren't late. 0 I'm not at school.	yesterday My father was at wo	at home ? in Tokyo hot? open. in the office in Lima tired late.	A B A B C D	Were Yes, we 2 No, it 3 5 Yes, the Where She 8 9 No, the	weren't. you and Charlie at the e 1 it good? The sings the tickets exp ey 6 7 your m born in A her parents Al ey 10 Her n and her mother 12	er 4 terrible. pensive? nother born? .rgentina in 1955. rgentinian? r father ¹¹
B	Rewrite the sentences i	n the simple past.				Complete the sentent the simple past.	
	We watch TV. 1 I study English. 2 Do you listen to the new 3 He doesn't cook. 4 Does she play sports? 5 They work late. 6 She travels a lot. 7 Jack works in New York. 8 I call my parents every of 9 We don't live in France. O Anna asks a lot of questi	ws?	a ye la la five ye ye ten ye	esterday? est night. college? est week. in 2018. ears ago. esterday. ears ago.	1 2 3 4 5	The movie was very you? My brother day yesterday. I to the Sarah Martin at the party?	nother on her birthday. sad video games all e news this morning with
	Correct the information n parentheses.	using the word				ith the verbs in pare	entheses in the
	She put on a coat. (jacke <u>She didn't put on a coat.</u> 1 She wore a red dress. (b	She put on a jacket.	friends at 10:0	s. We ¹ 00 p.m. we	e ²	(take) a taxi to	hinese restaurant, and Union Square. We
2	I came home early. (late)		to the	water. We	e ⁵	(can) see the f	ireworks very well, and
3	We went by train. (bus)						(get) home at 4:00 (be) very happy!
4	He said hello. (goodbye)		A <u>D</u>	id you go	out las		ast.
5	You had a sandwich. (sale	ad)	1 A W	o, I staye Vhat			yesterday?
6	He knew her last name. (first name)	2 A W	wore jean /here ne bough		n Paris.	her shoes?
			3 A W	/hat time		(c) (c) 2002(c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c) (c)	?

Go online to review the grammar for each lesson

8A simple past: regular and irregular

1 was / were and could

38.9

+ Gordon was Jeremy's business partner. They were at his country house.

They could hear a strange noise.

- She wasn't at home last night. You weren't very nice to her. I couldn't sleep.
- ? Were you sick yesterday? When was he born? Could you see anybody in the library?
- 2 regular verbs
 - + I really liked the present. She wanted to be a doctor.
 - ☐ She didn't enjoy the concert. They didn't arrive until very late.
 - ? Did you watch the game last night? When did you finish the book?
- 3 irregular verbs
 - + I went to Paris last summer. She slept on the sofa.
 - He didn't come home last night. They didn't hear the music.
 - ? Did you speak to your sister yesterday? Where did you have lunch?

- 1 The past of be is was / were, and the past of can is could. We add not to make negatives and reverse the subject and verb to make questions.
- 2 Regular verbs add -ed or -d in the simple past 1, e.g., want-wanted, like-liked.
- 3 Irregular verbs change their form in the simple past ⊕, e.g., go-went, see-saw.
- Regular and irregular verbs (except can) use:
- didn't + base form to make negatives, e.g., I didn't like it.
 She didn't see him.
- did + subject + base form to make questions, e.g.,
 Did you want to come? Where did she go?





I went to Paris last summer.

She slept on the sofa.

8B there is / there are, some / any + plural nouns

singular	plural 38.	15
+ There's a garage There isn't a swimming pool. ? Is there a bathroom downstairs?	There are some pictures on the wall. There aren't any plants in the room. Are there any neighbors with children	?
✓ Yes, there is ✓ No, there isn't	Yes, there are. No, there aren't.	

there is / there are

- We use there is / there are to say that something exists or doesn't exist, e.g., There's a bathroom upstairs. There isn't a bathroom downstairs.
- We use there is + a singular noun and there are + plural nouns.
- There is is often contracted to There's. There are is not usually contracted.
- When we talk about a list of things, we use there is if the first word in the list is singular or there are if the first word in the list is plural.
 In my bedroom, there's a bed, two chairs, and a desk.
 In the living room, there are two armchairs and a sofa.

a / an, some, and any

- We often use there is / isn't with a / an, and there are / aren't with some and any.
- We use some and any with plural nouns. Some = not an exact number, e.g., There are some eggs in the refrigerator.
- We use some in ⊞ sentences and any in ⊡ and ②.

There is / There are or It is / They are?

Be careful. There is and It is are different.

There's a key on the table. **It's** the key to the kitchen.

There are three bedrooms in the apartment. **They're** all very small.

8C there was / there were

singular	plural	€ 8.21
+ There was a big mirror There wasn't a TV. ? Was there a bathroom?	There were fou There weren't a Were there any	any ghosts.
✓ Yes, there was. ✓ No, there wasn't.	Yes, there were	

there was / there were is the past of there is / there are.
 We use there was / there were to say that something existed or didn't exist, e.g., There were two computers in the office, but there wasn't a printer.



-	-	
	m	

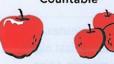
	·		
9	Complete the conversation using the simple past of the verbs in parentheses.	f	b Complete the sentences with the simple past of a verb from the list.
	•		of a verb from the list.
	A Where <u>were</u> (be) you last night at 8:00? B 1 (be) at home, Detective. With my wife.		arrive not can hear read see sit
	We 2 (be) at home all evening.		sleep speak not want
	A ³ What you (do)?		They <u>spoke</u> quietly for a few minutes.
	B We 4 (watch) TV and then we 5		1 I very badly last night.
	(have) a light dinner. We 6 (not be) hungry	-	2 She a strange noise.
	After that, we 7 (go) to bed.		3 We find our keys.
	A ⁸ What time you (go) to bed	?	4 I three books last week.
	B About 10 o'clock.		5 They at the airport at 11:30.
	A 9 you (hear) a noise during		6 He her with an old friend.
	the night?		7 Wenext to each other in class.
	B No, 10 (not hear) anything.		8 You to come.
			to come.
B			
	Complete with \pm or $?$ of There's or There are.	ıW c	rite 🛨 or 🖃 sentences or with there is / are
	<u>There's</u> a dishwasher in the kitchen.	+ 6	a / an, some, or any.
	Are there any people in the room?	ſ	+ trees / the yard
	1 any books on the shelf?		There are some trees in the yard.
	2 a bathroom downstairs?	1 [+ table / the kitchen.
	3 some stairs over there.		? fireplace / the living room?
	4 a rug on the floor.		= plants / my apartment.
	5 some pictures on the wall.		? people / the yard?
	6 a shower in the bathroom?		pictures / my bedroom.
	7some chairs in the yard?		TV / the kitchen.
8	B a lamp in the bedroom?		+ computer / the study.
	g a motorcycle in the garage.		cupboards / the dining room.
	any glasses in the cupboard?		? bathtub / the bathroom?
	any graded in the capacitat		∃ light / the garage.
			(- p.65
C			
-			
(Complete with the correct form of there was or b	Cor	mplete the sentences with there was / were /
t	here were.	was	sn't / weren't + a, some, or any.
1	A How many guests <u>were</u> <u>there</u> in the hotel?	T	<u>There were some</u> ghosts in the haunted hotel I stayed in.
	four including me.		My sister didn't take a shower because
	a Brazilian tourist and	-	spider in the bathtub.
	3 two business people.	2 V	Ve couldn't watch the news because
A	4 a restaurant?		V in our room.
В	No, 5, but 6	3	couldn't sleep on the plane because
	a coffee shop.		oisy children behind me.
	a TV in your room?	4 T	hey couldn't play tennis because
В	Yes, ⁸ , but ⁹		ennis balls.
	any chairs.		he didn't have a coffee because cups.
	. How many beds ¹⁰ ?		le took a lot of photos because
В	One. A double bed.		eautiful view of the town.
		7 TI	hey couldn't park near the restaurant because
			parking lot 🔼 p. 67

Go online to review the grammar for each lesson

GRAMMAR BANK

9A countable / uncountable nouns, a / an, some / any

Countable









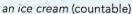
three apples an apple rice

 English nouns can be countable or uncountable. countable = things you can count, e.g., apples. Countable nouns can be singular (an apple) or plural (apples). uncountable = things you can't count, e.g., rice, meat NOT two rices, three meats.

Uncountable nouns are usually singular.

Some nouns can be countable and uncountable, e.g., ice cream.







some ice cream (uncountable)

a / an, some / any

	countable	uncountable	1 9.2
+ We need	an apple. some apples.	some butter.	
☐ We don't need	a tomato. any tomatoes.	any rice.	
? Do we need	an orange? any oranges?	any sugar?	

- We use a / an with singular countable nouns. a / an = one.
- We use some in

 with plural countable nouns and with uncountable nouns.
- We use any in □ and ② with plural countable nouns and with uncountable nouns.



O some in [7]

We use some in 12 to ask for and offer things.

Can I have some sugar, please? Would you like some coffee?

9B quantifiers

uncountable (singular)	short answers	full answers
How much sugar do you eat?	do A lot. A little. Not much. None. I eat a lot of sugar. I eat a little sugar. I don't eat much sug	
countable (plural)		
How many cookies do you eat?	A lot. A few. Not many.	I eat a lot of cookies. I eat a few cookies. I don't eat many cookies. I don't eat any cookies.

a lot of and lots of

A lot of and lots of mean the same thing, e.g., He eats a lot of cheese / lots of cheese.

- · We use How much...? with uncountable nouns and How many...? with plural countable nouns.
- a lot (of) with countable and uncountable nouns for a big quantity. a little / not...much with uncountable nouns for a small quantity. a few / not...many with countable plural nouns for a small quantity. not...any (none in short answers) for zero quantity.

a lot of and much / many

- In
 ∃ sentences, we usually use a lot of.
- In

 sentences and

 , we usually use much and many. I don't drink **much** water. Do you drink **much** coffee?
- It is also possible to use a lot of in \square and \square . I don't eat a lot of vegetables. Do you drink a lot of coffee?

9C comparative adjectives

A whale is louder than a lion. **3** 9.18 Canada is bigger than the US. K2 is more difficult to climb than Mount Everest. My new job is better than my old one. The traffic is always worse in the evening.

 We use comparative adjectives + than to compare two things, people, etc.

adjective	comparative	spelling
old nice	older nicer	one-syllable adjectives: + -er (or -r if the adjective ends in e)
big hot	bigger hotter	adjectives ending one vowel + one consonant: double consonant + -er
dry healthy	drier healthier	one- or two-syllable adjectives ending consonant + y: +y-ier
tired	more tired	one-syllable adjectives ending -ed: more + adjective
famous expensive	more famous more expensive	two- or more syllable adjectives: more + adjective
good bad far	better worse farther / further	irregular

9A

a Write a, an, or some + a food or drink word.

	1 Malk	2
3	4	5
6	7	8
some bread		*
1	5	
2	6	
3	7	

b	Complete	the	conversation	with	a,	an,	some,	or	an
---	----------	-----	--------------	------	----	-----	-------	----	----

A W	What can we make for your brother and his girlfriend?		
B Le	et's make <u>a</u> pizza.		
A G	ood idea. Are there ¹	tomatoes?	
B Ye	s. And there are ²	mushrooms, too.	
A Gr	eat!		
BO	n no! There isn't ³	cheese!	
A O	n. Wait a minute. I bought 4_	steak yesterday	
Ar	e there ⁵ pot	tatoes?	
B Ye	s, there are.		
	ood. So we can have steak a fruit?	and French fries. Do we have	
		oranges. Yes, and there's	
8	apple and 9	bananas, too.	

_____ fruit salad for dessert.

9B

a Complete the questions with How much or How many.

	How much sugar do you put in your tea?
1	butter do you use for this cake?
2	cans of soda did she drink?
3	oil do I need?
4	chocolates were in that box?
5	rice do you want?
6	coffee does he drink?
7	bottles of water did you buy?
8	cans of tuna do we have?
9	orange juice is there in that carton?
10	cookies did you eat?

b Circle the correct word or phrase.

A OK. You can make 10_

B OK. Let's start cooking.

I don't put(much) many salt on my food.

- 1 We don't eat a lot of / a lot cookies.
- 2 A How much chocolate do you eat? B A little. / A few.
- 3 My husband doesn't drink much / many coffee.
- 4 A How much fruit did you buy? B A lot. / A lot of.
- 5 We eat a lot of / much fish. We love it!
- 6 A Do your children drink any milk?
 - B No, not much / not many.
- 7 Donna ate her hamburger, but she didn't eat much / many French fries.
- 8 A How many vegetables do you eat?
 - B Any. / None. I don't like them.
- 9 I have a cup of tea and a few / a little cereal for breakfast.
- 10 A Do you eat much / many meat? B No, I don't eat no / any meat. I'm a vegetarian.

G p.72

9C

a Write the comparative form of the adjectives.

	big	bigger
1	high	
2	dirty	
3	important	<u> </u>
4	late	
5	low	
6	bored	
7	wet	
8	modern	4
9	comfortable	
10	happy	

Complete with a comparative adjective + than

	complete with a comparative adjective + than.				
	My sister is <u>younger than</u>	me. She's only 18. (young)			
1	The farmer's market is	the supermarket for ve	egetables. (cheap)		
2	Italian is	for Spanish students	it is for		
	English students. (easy)	,			
3	I always feel	in the afternoon	in the		
	morning. (tired)				
4	This restaurant is	when it firs	t opened. (busy)		
	Come in the summer. The v				
	(good)		1 3		
6	I love science. I find it	histor	y. (interesting)		
	Cusco is				
	I'm				
9	The economic situation is _	it	was last year. (bad)		
	Skiing is				

10

GRAMMAR BANK

10A superlative adjectives

It's the oldest bridge in the world. 10.4 It's the most popular shopping mall in the US.

She's the best student in the class. Monday is the worst day of the week.

- We use the + superlative adjective to say which is the (biggest, etc.) in a group.
- After superlatives, we use in (not of)
 + places, e.g., the longest road in the world, the tallest building in New York.

adjective	comparative	superlative	spelling
cold	colder	the coldest	one-syllable adjectives: + -est
high	higher	the highest	
big	bigger	the biggest	adjectives ending one vowel + one consonant: double consonant + -est
hot	hotter	the hottest	
dry	drier	the driest	one- or two-syllable adjectives ending consonant + y: + -iest
sunny	sunnier	the sunniest	
bored	more bored	the most bored	one-syllable adjectives ending -ed:
stressed	more stressed	the most stressed	the most + adjective
dangerous	more dangerous	the most dangerous	two- or more syllable adjectives: the most + adjective
good bad far	better worse farther/further	the best the worst the farthest/ furthest	irregular

10B be going to (plans), future time expressions

I'm going to take a vacation next month.

10.9

I'm not going to study English. Are you going to fly to Paris?

- We use be going to + verb (base form) to talk about future plans.
- We often use future time expressions with going to, e.g., tomorrow, next week, next month, next year, etc.

+			
full form	contraction		
I am You are He / She / It is We are They are	I'm You're He / She / It's We're They're	going to	take a vacation next summer. study English tonight.

full form	contraction		
I am not You are not He / She / It is not We are not They are not	I'm not You aren't He / She / It isn't We aren't They aren't	going to	take a vacation next summer. study English tonight.

?				X	
Am I Are you Is he / she / it going to Are we Are they	take a vacation next summer? study English tonight?	Yes,	I am. you are. he / she / it is. we are. they are.	No,	I'm not. you aren't. he / she / it isn't. we aren't. they aren't.

10C be going to (predictions)

 We can use be going to + verb (base form) to make predictions (= to say what you think or can see is going to happen in the future).

I think it's going to rain.
You're going to be very happy.
I'm sure they're going to win.

10.20









10A

a	V	Vrite the opposite.	
		the smallest	the biggest
	1	the coldest	-
	2	the most expensive	
	3	the best	
	4	the most difficult	
	5	the driest	

b Complete the sentences with a superlative adjective.

	The tigers are the most danger	rous animals in the zoo. (dangerous)
1	Our house is	house on the street. (big)
2	For me, Saturday is	day of the week. (good)
3	My bedroom is	room in our house. (small)
4	Sit here – it's	chair in the room. (comfortable)
5	My neighbors upstairs are	people in the world. (noisy)
6	My boss is	person I know. (stressed)
7	Sophie is	_ student in our English class. (young)
8	building i	n my town is the museum. (beautiful)

70
/ N

10B

6 the shortest 7 the nearest 8 the cleanest

Complete the sentences with the correct form of be going to and the verb in parentheses.

	3 3	P
	She doesn't have a car. She's	going to go by train. (go
1	We need a vacation. We	
	a hotel near the beach. (boo	<)
2	Tomorrow is Saturday. I	
	in bed until 10:00! (stay)	
3	My sister	medicine. She
	wants to be a doctor. (study)	
4	Laura and David	married
	soon. (get)	
5	Jack's office is very busy righ	t now. He
	928 60 30000	late tonight. (work)
5	My son	to college – he
	wants to get a job. (not go)	
7	We	_ any museums because
	the kids think they're boring.	(not visit)

b Complete the sentences with be going to + a verb.

	ot buy call not come get ave live sleep watch
	I'm at a friend's house. I'm going to sleep on her sofa.
1	I need to talk to my mom. Iher tonight.
2	What we for dinner this evening?
3	My mother isn't feeling very well, so she to the concert with us
4	There's a lot of snow! How you to work?
5	They love their old car. They a new one.
6	The Force Awakens is on TV tonight you it?
	A 0/

9 p.80

10C

Write predictions for the pictures.



He's going to play tennis. __dinner. _____ a nice day. _____the bus.

_____ an omelet.

b Complete the predictions with be going to and a verb.

	e buy not finish forget have (x2) not like ot pass sleep snow win	•
	It's very cold. Do you think it's going to snow	?
1	You're driving too fast! We a	n accident!
2	She isn't a very good student. She	
	the exam.	
3	Their new album is great! A lot of people	
		it!
4	I have a lot of homework. I	it tonight
5	They're playing very well. I think they	
7727	the game.	
6	Look at the time. We	
7	Oh no, it's a horror movie. I know I	it.
8	He didn't write down her address. He	it.
9	The baby's very tired. She	well tonight.
0	Tokyo is a wonderful city. You	
	a great time there.	(-) p.83

Go online to review the grammar for each lesson



GRAMMAR BANK

11A adverbs (manner and modifiers)

adverbs of manner

- 1 She wants to live independently. 11.1 Her children always speak politely. She eats very quickly.
- 2 I work hard. We speak English well.
- We use adverbs of manner to say how people do things.
- Adverbs usually go after the verb or verb I speak English well. NOT I speak well-English.
- 1 We usually form adverbs by adding -ly to adjectives.
- 2 Some adverbs are irregular. They can be the same as the adjective, e.g., fast, hard, or a different word, e.g., well.

adjective	adverb	spelling
slow quick bad careful	slowly quickly badly carefully	+ -ly
healthy easy	healthily easily	consonant + y: y + -ily
possible	possibly	le → -ly
good fast hard	well fast hard	îrregular

 Remember the difference between adjectives and adverbs. I'm a careful driver. (careful is an adjective. It describes the noun, driver.) I drive carefully. (carefully is an adverb. It describes the verb, drive.)

very, really, etc.

It isn't very expensive. **11.2** She drives incredibly fast. They speak really slowly.

- · We use the adverbs very, really, etc., to modify adjectives or other adverbs.
- They always go before the adjective or adverb.

Words ending in -ly Be careful. Some words that end in -ly aren't adverbs, e.g., friendly (= adjective). He's a friendly person.

11B verb + infinitive

- 1 | want to travel for six months. 11.6 She decided to go to Australia. You need to practice every day. When did you learn to play the guitar?
- 2 Would you like to go to Africa? I wouldn't like to be famous.

O would like and like

I'd like to dance. = I want to dance. I like dancing. = I enjoy it; I like it in general.

- 1 Many verbs are often followed by another verb in the infinitive. These include want, need, learn, promise, decide, plan, choose, try, remember, forget, and hope.
- 2 I would like to = I want to (now or in the future). Would like is also followed by the infinitive.
- Contractions: 'd = would, wouldn't = would not.
- We can also use Would you like...? to offer, e.g., Would you like a drink?
- would like is the same for all persons.

11.12

11C definite article

1 the Can you close the window, please? Can you check their address on the internet? It's the best restaurant I know.

2 no article Men are usually more interested in sports than women. She's my mother's cousin. That's Tom's chair! What time did you have breakfast?

Karen's studying physics in college.

Jim goes to school by bus.

a/an or the?

We often use a the first time we mention a person or thing. The next time we use the because it is now clear what we are talking about, e.g., Let's have a pizza. The pizzas are very good here.

1 We use the:

- when it is clear what we are talking about, e.g., Close the window. = the window that is open.
- when there is only one of something, e.g., the internet, the sun,
- before superlative adjectives, e.g., the biggest, the best, etc.
- 2 We don't usually use the:
- when we talk about people or things in general. Men are more interested in sports than women. (general) BUT The women in this class work harder than the men. (specific)
- before possessive 's. She's my mother's cousin. NOT She's the my mother's cousin.
- meals: have breakfast, lunch, dinner, etc. by + transportation: go by car, travel by train, etc. general places: work, school, college, bed, home.



People drive very dangerous / de wrote down her email careful / carefully. My nieghbor's children aren't very polite / doolitely. My niece plays the piano beautiful / deautifully. Fast food is very unhealthy / unhealthily. Did people often walk very slow / slowly. Bought a real / really cheap bag at the sale. My friend sings very good / well. My sister speaks Spanish perfect / perfectly. We wear casual / casually clothes to work. The view from the top is incredible / decredibly beautiful.	The 1 Can 2 Dor 3 I do very 4 She 5 We' 6 Prof 7 We 8 She	trains in you tal you tal of the kind of t	easy n Swe k peing vn ing I socce	fast den ru in the er play	good n perfe , p , wh ocean k becau becau in the	hard ctly evolease? en it's recause use the ecause illy eat ne sem	healthy ven when I'm trying raining. e I can't s chair on we need very i-final and	perfect it snows. g to sleep swim ly had thr to finish to	quiet ee legs he job 5-1.
	r . I		. 7		.1				
learned a car when I was 17. Our refrigerator is broken. We need wouldn't like famous. I'm happy the was terrible. We decided you in his off hey're planning They're looking	_ a new vay I am he got h at h fice. g for a ve	now. nome. nome.	2 5 6 7 8	Wou me to me to me to speak l'd li like to bo yo He's his to dent l'ove l't's c	ald you latenight? grandmaking Spake to train a relax / rou wan hoping est next t people ist. e to reacold. You	ike to liber level on the relaxing to plate to get week. The hate is need in need in the relaxing the reach to get week.	earned to when she when she welling a g on the y / playir / getting to go / go ding dete to wear /	o speak / was 60! round As weekend og soccer of the resul oring to the ective stor wearing a pook / cook	with ia. ? Its of e ries.
de the correct word or phrase. ow much time do you spend on internet / ive internet? by brother is in college / in the college udying math. ove traveling by train / by the train. de're going to visit my aunt on weekend / in the weekend. but's stay at home / at the home tonight. I don't want go out. ove reading novels / the novels. blanda is best / the best student in our class.	1 2 3 4 5 6 7 8	It's the What I don't Lorena Where Can yo My bro	e long time c t like ch a does do ye su ou pas other c ear, we	est riv	er in the finish _ people behave e ally have e out, so sa _ on vaca	who tadd very dog	_ work? alk loudly badly yes gs lunch c ent for a s se? expensive y	sterday. during the walk. e ice crean _ car.	week? n.
	reople drive very dangerous /	reople drive very dangerous / dangerous / dangerous / de wrote down her email careful / carefully. My neighbor's children aren't very polite / 1 Can / (y neighbor's children aren't very polite / 1 Can / (y neighbor's children aren't very polite / 1 Can / (y niece plays the piano beautiful / 2 Don / (y niece plays the piano beautiful / 2 Don / (y niece plays the piano beautiful / 2 Don / (y niece plays the piano beautiful / 2 Don / (y niece plays the piano beautiful / 2 Don / (y niece plays the piano beautiful / 2 Don / (y niece plays the piano beautiful / 3 I do very developed often walk very slow / slowly. My friend sings very good / well. My sister speaks Spanish perfect / perfectly. We wear casual / casually clothes to work. The view from the top is incredible / (noredibly beautiful). In plete the sentences with the infinitive form of the very nicredibly beautiful. In plete the sentences with the infinitive form of the very nicredibly beautiful. In plete the sentences with the infinitive form of the very nicredibly beautiful. In plete the sentences with the infinitive form of the very nicredibly beautiful. In plete the sentences with the infinitive form of the very nicredibly beautiful. In plete the sentences with the infinitive form of the very nicredibly beautiful. In plete the sentences with the infinitive form of the very nicredibly beautiful. In plete the sentences with the infinitive form of the very nicredibly beautiful. In plete the sentences with the infinitive form of the very nicredibly beautiful. In plete the sentences with the infinitive form of the very nicredibly beautiful. In plete the sentences with the infinitive form of the very nicredibly beautiful. In plete the sentences with the infinitive form of the very nicredibly beautiful. In plete the sentences with the infinitive form of the very nicredibly beautiful. In plete the sentences with the infinitive form of the very nicredibly beautiful. In plete the sentences with the sale. In plete the sentences with the sale. I	the worde down her email careful / carefully. Ally neighbor's children aren't very polite / solitely. Ally niece plays the piano beautiful / seautifully. Ally niece plays the piano beautiful / seautifully. Bold people often walk very slow / slowly. Bought a real / really cheap bag at the sale. Ally friend sings very good / well. Ally sister speaks Spanish perfect / perfectly. Ally sister speaks Spanish perfect / perfectly. Ally sister speaks Spanish perfect / perfectly. All we war casual / casually clothes to work. All he view from the top is incredible / solitely beautiful. All sister speaks spanish perfect / perfectly. All we war casual / casually clothes to work. All the view from the top is incredible / solitely beautiful. All sister speaks spanish perfect / perfectly. All we played. All she was the exam. Bould careful The trains is 1. Can you tal 2. Don't drive very All she was the very Bour tall elimb drive get married go as leave see stay and loves Africa. He wants to climb Mount Kilimanjaro. Bearned a car when I was 17. Bour refrigerator is broken. We need a new one. Bould have been as the significient when he got home. Bour leave see stay a new one. Bould you like grain in happy the way I am now. Bould you like grain in happy the way I am now. Bould next week. Bould you like grain in happy the way I am now. Bould you like grain in happy the way I am now. Bould you like grain in happy the way I am now. Bould you like grain in happy the way I am now. Bould you like grain in happy the way I am now. Bould you like grain in happy the way I am now. Bould you like grain in happy the way I am now. Bould you like grain in happy the way I am now. Bould you like grain in happy the way I am now. Bould you like grain in happy the way I am now. Bould you like grain in happy the way I am now. Bould you like grain in happy the wa	the copile drive very dangerous / dangerous / the wrote down her email careful / carefully. My neighbor's children aren't very polite / woitely. My niece plays the piano beautiful / 20 Don't drive 20 Don't drive 21 Don't drive 22 Don't drive 23 I don't like being very 24 She sat down 25 We're working 26 Professional socce 26 We're wer casual / casually clothes to work. 27 We played 27 We wear casual / casually clothes to work. 28 She was the best exam 29 Professional socce 26 Professional socce 27 We played 29 Professional socce 27 We played 29 Professional socce 27 We played 29 Professional socce 20 Profes	the worte down her email careful / carefully. If yn eighbor's children aren't very polite / solitely. My niece plays the piano beautiful / seautifully. My niech beautiful / seautifully. My niece plays the piano beautiful / seautifully. My piece plays the piano beautiful / seautifully. My siter speaks Spanish perfect / perfectly. My sister speaks Spanish perfect / perfectly. My played 8 She was the best student exam 1 Wor met a leave see stay am loves Africa. He wants to climb Mount Kilimanjaro. a leave see stay am loves Africa. He wants to climb Mount Kilimanjaro. a rar when I was 17. In the trains in Sweden ru 2 Don't drive 3 I don't like being in the very We revery 4 We re working 6 Professional soccer play We played 8 She was the best student in a new one. 1 Wor met a leave see stay 2 My spead 1 Wor met a leave see stay 2 My spead 1 Wor met a leave see stay 2 My spead 1 Wor met a leave was the climb were was leave	be pelle drive very dangerous / @angerous le wrote down her email careful / carefully. When he will be careful easy fast good of well. When the pelle of the corect word or phrase. The trains in Sweden run perfection of the verb of the verb or late of the corect word or phrase. The trains in Sweden run perfection of the verb or late of the corect word or phrase. The trains in Sweden run perfection of the verb or late of the core of the well. Shows the planning or a safari? The trains in Sweden run perfection of the verb or late of the core of the well when the core of the well when the core of the verb or late of of	bad careful easy fast good hard careful/ carefully. Ay neighbor's children aren't very polite / solitely. Ay neighbor's children solitely. Ay she sat down be acus and wery solothy like being in the ocean becaus very when it's like being in the ocean becaus very when it's like being in the ocean becaus very when it's like being in the ocean becaus very when it's 1 can you because the because the because the because the because the solothy very solothy like being in the ocean becaus very when it's 1 can you because the because the because the best student in the class of the verb on the verb on the verb on th	le people drive very dangerous / Cangerous	te wrote down her email careful/ carefull/ carefull/ angerous/ te wrote down her email careful/ carefull/ carefull/ angerous/ ya neighbor's children aren't very polite / solitely, where plays the piano beautiful/ teautifully. ast food is very unhealthy / unhealthily. Bob pople often walk very slow / slowly. Sowyl a real / really cheap bag at the sale. Y freally the care was a reasonal / casually clothes to work. A the view from the top is incredible / incredibly beautiful. Implete the sentences with the infinitive form of the verb in the list. Implete the sentences with the infinitive form of the verb in the list. Implete the sentences with the infinitive form of the verb in the list. Implete the sentences with the infinitive form of the verb in the list. Implete the sentences with the infinitive form of the verb in the list. Implete the sentences with the infinitive form of the verb in the list. Implete the sentences with the infinitive form of the verb in the list. Implete the sentences with the infinitive form of the verb in the class and she passed the exam in the exam in the exam

C p.91

7 Hove clear nights when you can see moon / the moon. 8 That's the man / a man I told you about yesterday.

9 Can you open a door / the door for me, please? 10 He had breakfast / the breakfast late this morning.

12.2

12

GRAMMAR BANK

No, he / she / it

hasn't.

12A present perfect

1 A Have you seen the new Matt Damon movie? B Yes, I have.

She hasn't read any books in English.

- 2 Have you ever read a Russian novel? I've never worked in an office.
- 3 Have you finished the exercise? Your parents have arrived. They're in the living room.
- 1 We use the present perfect when we talk or ask about events in the past, but when we don't say or ask when.
- 2 We often use the present perfect with ever (= at any time in your life) and never (= at no time in your life).
- 3 We also use the present perfect to talk about recent events, e.g., I've finished my homework.

+		
full form of have	contraction	past participle of main verb
I have	I've	
You have	You've	
He / She / It has	He / She / It's	seen that movie.
We have	We've	
They have	They've	

- Vanioq				
full form of have			contraction	past participle of main verb
I / You / We / They hav He / She / It has not	ve not		haven't	seen that movie.
?	Dad d	/		X
Have I / you / see			s, I / you / we / ey have.	No, I / you / we / they haven't.

• To make the present perfect, we use have / has + the past participle of the verb.

it has

Yes, he / she /

's = has in present perfect.

movie?

we / they

Has he / she / it

base form	simple past	past participle
like	liked	liked
want	wanted	wanted

 Past participles of regular verbs are the same as the simple past.

base form	simple past	past participle
read /rid/	read /red/	read /red/
see	saw	seen

 Past participles of irregular verbs are sometimes the same as the simple past, e.g., read /rɛd/ but sometimes different, e.g., seen.
 Look at the list of irregular past participles on p.165.

12B present perfect or simple past?

- A Have you been to that new Italian restaurant?
- B Yes, I have.

A \A/b == did vev ==

- A When did you go there?
- B | went last weekend.
- A Who did you go with?
- B I went with some people from work.
- We often use the present perfect to ask / tell somebody about a past action for the first time. We don't ask / say when the action happened.

Have you been to that new Italian restaurant?

- Then we use the simple past to ask / talk about the details.
 "When did you go there?" "I went last weekend."
- We use the simple past NOT the present perfect with when and past time expressions, e.g., yesterday, last week.
 When did you see the movie? NOT When have you seen the movie?

I saw it last week. NOT I've seen it last week.

been or gone?

12.8

- A Have you ever been to Japan?

12.9

- B Yes, I've been to Tokyo three times.
- A My sister has gone to Japan to study Japanese.
- been and gone have different meanings. been is the past participle of be, and gone is the past participle of go.
- In the present perfect, we use been to (NOT gone to OR been in) to say that somebody has visited a place.
 I've been to Tokyo three times.

Have you **been to** the new Japanese restaurant on Pine Street?

- We use gone to when somebody goes to a place and is still there.
 - My parents have **gone to** the US for their vacation. They're having a great time.
- · Compare:

Nick has **been to** Paris. = He visited Paris and came back at some time in the past.

Nick has **gone to** Paris. = He went to Paris and he is in Paris now.



12A

a	Write the sentences with contractions.
	I have seen the movie. <u>I've seen the movie.</u>
	1 She has not read the book
	2 You have not finished your ice cream!
	3 We have heard the news
	4 He has arrived at the airport.
	5 They have not asked for the check
	6 We have not seen him before.
	7 It has stopped raining
b	Write + and - sentences and ? in the present perfect.
	Use contractions where possible.
	+ / see a famous actor. <u>I've seen a famous actor.</u>
	1 + I / change my email address
	2 — my boyfriend / work abroad
	3 ? you / decide what to do
	4 — they / pass the exam
	5 ? he / accept the invitation
	6 + she / study three languages
	7 — the train / arrive
	8 ? the children / clean their room
	9 — my girlfriend / called me
	10 + my father / help me a lot

c Write a sentence in the present perfect for each picture. Use the verbs in the list.

ask	clean	not finish	paint	pass	see	
	4		1	THE EN	VD	
2	AGE	3	3	QE I'E		7
4	9-		5			
He	e's clear	ned the floo	or.			
1 _				a good	d movi	e.
2 — 3 —				nis driv	er's tes	t.
3				h	er boo	k.
4 _					the wa	II.

5 _____ a difficult question.

C p.94

12B

a (Circle the correct form.

(Have you ever seen) Did you ever see a Japanese

- 1 I haven't finished / didn't finish this book. I'm on page 210.
- 2 My boyfriend has given / gave me a ring for my last birthday.
- 3 They've bought / bought a new house last month.
- 4 Have you ever danced / Did you ever dance the
- 5 My friends have gone / went to a party last weekend.

b (Circle the correct verb, been or gone.

Let's go to the Peking Duck. I've never been / gone there.

- 1 The secretary isn't here. She's been / gone out for lunch.
- 2 I've never been I gone to the US.
- 3 My neighbors aren't at home. They've been / gone on
- 4 Have you ever been / gone to China?
- 5 We have lots of food. I've been / gone to the supermarket.

c Put the verbs in parentheses in the present perfect or simple past.

A <u>Have</u> you ever <u>been</u> to Thailand? (be)

B No, but I <u>went</u> to South Korea last year. (go)

A 1_____ you ever ____ any countries in South America? (visit)

B Yes, I have. I ²______ to Brazil a few years ago. (go)

A ³Who ______ you _____ with? (go)

B My boyfriend. It was a work trip and his company 4_____ for everything. (pay)

A How wonderful! 5______ you there for long? (be)

B No, we 6_____ only there for five days. (be)

A ⁷Where ______ you _____? (stay)

B We 8_____ a suite in a five-star hotel. It was beautiful! (have)

A 9_____ the company _____ you on any other trips recently? (invite)

B No. My boyfriend ¹⁰_____ working there a year later, so that was our only trip. (stop)



Days and numbers

VOCABULARY BANK

1 DAYS OF THE WEEK

a Complete the days of the week with the letters.

W	Fr	S	Th	T	М	S	
M	onc	day	/'ma	nde	1/		iday /ˈfraɪdeɪ/
	ues	day	//tu	zde	I/		aturday /ˈsætərdeɪ/
ednesday /ˈwɛnzdeɪ/ ursday /ˈθərzdeɪ/						unday /'sʌndeɪ/	

- b **1.11** Listen and check.
- c 1.12 Listen and repeat the **bold** phrases.

the <u>weekend</u> (= Saturday and Sunday)
a <u>weekday</u> (= Monday-Friday)
What day is it to<u>day</u>? It's <u>Fri</u>day.
Have a good <u>weekend</u>. You too.
See you <u>later</u>. See you to<u>morrow</u>. See you on <u>Mon</u>day.

ACTIVATION Cover the days. Say them in order.

Capital letters

Days of the week begin with a capital letter. Tuesday **NOT** tuesday

2 NUMBERS 0-20

a Match the words and numbers.

	velve <u>twen</u> ty e <u>le</u> ver ve fif <u>teen se</u> ven	three	eigh <u>teen</u>
0	zero /'zirou/		
1	one /wʌn/	11	/r'levn/
2	two /tu/	12	/twelv/
3	three /9ri/	13	thirteen /0artin/
4	four /for/	14	fourteen /for'tin/
5	/faiv/	15	/fɪf'tin/
6	six /siks/	16	sixteen /sikstin/
7	/'sevn/	17	seventeen /sevn'tin/
8	eight /eɪt/	18	/er'tin/
9	nine /naɪn/	19	nineteen /nam'tin/
0	ten /ten/	20	/twenti/

b 1.13 Listen and check.

ACTIVATION Cover the words. Say the numbers.

Phone numbers

794-1938 = seven nine four, one nine three eight 44 = four four **OR** double four 0 = zero **OR** oh /ou/

3 NUMBERS 21-100

a Write the numbers.

21	twenty-one /twenti 'wan/	
	thirty /'θərti/	
	thirty-five /'θərti 'faɪv/	
	forty /'forti/	
	forty-three /'forti 'θri/	
	fifty /'fɪfti/	
	fifty-nine /fifti 'naın/	
	sixty /'sɪksti/	
	sixty-seven /siksti 'sevn/	
	seventy /sevnti/	
	seventy-two /'seventi tu/	
	eighty /'erti/	
	eighty-eight /'eiti 'eit/	
	ninety /'naınti/	
	ninety-four /'naınti for/	
	a hundred /a 'handrad/	

b **1.27** Listen and check.

Pronunciation

13 and 30, 14 and 40, etc., are similar, but the stress is different, e.g., thir teen, thir ty, four teen, for ty, etc.

ACTIVATION Cover the words. Say the numbers.

9 p.9

4 HIGH NUMBERS

9,000

Write the missing numbers or words.

105	a / one hundred and five	
	two hundred	$(\bigcirc)(\bigcirc)$
350	three hundred and	$$ 7/ \cup
875	eight hundred	seventy-five
1,000	a / one thousand /θauz(a)nd/
	one thousand five hundre	ed
2,012	two thousand and	
5,420	five thousand four	and twenty
200	twenty-five thousand	
100,000	a / one hundred	
1,000,000	a / one million / milyən/	
2 300,000	two million hu	indred thousand

b **19.14** Listen and check.

ACTIVATION Cover the words. Say the numbers.



Countries

VOCABULARY BANK

1 CONTINENTS





a Match the words and continents 1-6.

Continent	Adjective
Africa /ˈæfrɪkə/	African /æfrikən
Asia /'eɪʒə/	Asian /eran/
Au <u>stra</u> lia /ɔˈstreɪlyə/	Au <u>stra</u> lian /ɔˈstreɪlyən/
Europe /'yurəp/	Euro <u>pe</u> an /yurəˈpiən/
1 North A <u>mer</u> ica /norθ ə'mɛrɪkə/	North A <u>merican</u> /norθ əˈmɛrɪkən/
South A <u>mer</u> ica /sau0 ə'merikə/	South A <u>mer</u> ican /sau\theta \text{s'merikan/}

- b **1.18** Listen and check.
- c Cover the words and look at the map. Can you remember the continents and their adjectives?
 - Capital letters
 Use CAPITAL letters for continents, countries, nationalities, and languages, e.g., Spanish NOT spanish.

2 COUNTRIES AND NATIONALITIES

a **1.19** Match the countries and flags. Then listen and check.



b Cover the words and look at the flags. Can you remember the countries and nationalities?

ACTIVATION Choose six countries. Say the continent.

(Canada is in North America.

Thailand /tailænd/

9 p.8

Thai /tai/

Classroom language

VOCABULARY BANK

a Match the phrases and pictures.

The teacher says

- Open your books, please.
- Go to page 84.
- Do exercise a.
- Read the text.
- 1 Look at the board.
- Close the door.
- Work in pairs (or groups).
- Answer the questions.
- Listen and repeat.
- Stand up.
- Sit down.
- Turn off your phone.
- Please stop talking!
- b **1.33** Listen and check.



Use *please* at the beginning or end of a phrase to be polite.

Please come here. **OR** Come here, please.

c Match the phrases and pictures.

You say

- Sorry, can you repeat that, please?
- 14 Sorry I'm late.
- I don't understand.
- Can I have a copy, please?
- How do you spell it?
- I don't know.
- How do you say gato in English?
- Can you help me, please?
- What page is it?
- d 1.34 Listen and check.
- Cover the sentences and questions and look at the pictures. Say the sentences and questions.

ACTIVATION Try to use the **You say** language in your next English lesson.













































Things

VOCABULARY BANK

a Match the words and photos.

- a bag /bæg/
- a calendar /ˈkæləndər/
- a change purse /tfeind3 pars/
- a charger /'tʃurdʒər/
- 1 a coin /kɔɪn/
- a credit card /ˈkrɛdət kard/ (or debit card)
- a dictionary /dikfə,neri/
- a file / a binder /fail//bainder/
- glasses /ˈglæsəz/
- headphones /hedfounz/
- an ID card /aɪˈdi kord/
- a key /ki/
- a lamp /læmp/
- a laptop /'læptop/
- a magazine /mægəˈzin/
- a newspaper /'nuz,peipər/
- a notebook /'noutbuk/
- a pen /pεn/
- a pencil /'pensl/
- a (cell) phone /foun/
- a photo /foutou/
- a piece of paper /pis əv 'peɪpər/
- scissors /'sɪzərz/
- sunglasses /'sʌnˌqlæsəz/
- a tablet /'tæblət/
- a ticket /'tɪkɪt/
- a tissue /'tɪʃu/
- an um<u>bre</u>lla /ʌmˈbrɛlə/
- a wallet /wolat/
- a watch /wqt//

b \$\mathbb{0} 2.1 Listen and check.

Plural nouns

Some words for things are always plural, e.g., glasses, headphones, scissors. Don't use a / an with plural nouns. **NOT** a glasses, a headphones.

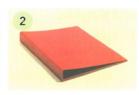
ACTIVATION Cover the words and look at the photos. In pairs, ask and answer.

What is it?) (It's a watch.

What are they? They're glasses.































































Adjectives

VOCABULARY BANK

- a Match the words and pictures.
 - <u>beau</u>tiful /'byutəfl/ <u>ug</u>ly /'ʌgli/
 - big /big/ small /small/
 - cheap /tʃip/ expensive /ik'spɛnsɪv/
 clean /klin/ dirty /ˈdərti/
 - easy /ˈizi/ difficult /ˈdɪfɪˌkʌlt/
 - fast /fæst/ slow /slou/
 - full /fol/ empty /'em(p)ti/
 - 1 good /god/ bad /bæd/
 high /hat/ low /lou/
 hot /hat/ cold /kould/

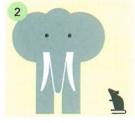
 - old /ould/ young /yʌŋ/
 rich /rɪtʃ/ poor /pɔr/
 right /raɪt/ left /lɛft/
 right /raɪt/ wrong /rɔŋ/
 - safe /setf/ dangerous /demd3(a)ras/
 - the same /sem/ different /'dif(ə)rənt/
 strong /strɔŋ/ weak /wik/
 - tall /tal/ short /fort/
- b **2.7** Listen and check.
- Test your partner. A say an adjective and
 B say the opposite.
 - Modifiers: very / really
 We often use modifiers before
 adjectives.
 A Ferrari is very / really fast.

ACTIVATION Look at the things in the list. Say two adjectives for each one. Use modifiers.

- a Ferrari Mount Everest Bill Gates the Mona Lisa the Pyramids Africa your town or city
- a Ferrari (It's really fast and very expensive.
- Opinion adjectives
 good: nice /nais/, great /grent/,
 fantastic /fæn'tæstik/

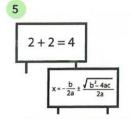
bad: awful /'sfl/, terrible /'terab(a)l/



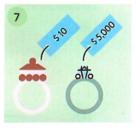




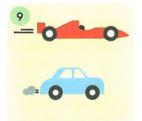






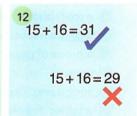
















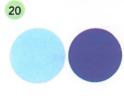


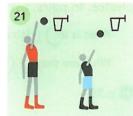












Verb phrases

VOCABULARY BANK

- a Match the verbs and photos.
 - cook /kuk/
 - do /du/
 - drink /drink/
 - drive /draw/
 - eat /it/
 - go /gou/
 - have /hæv/
 - like /lark/
 - listen /'lɪsn/
 - live /lɪv/
 - need /nid/
 - play /plei/
 - read /rid/
 - say /seɪ/
 - speak /spik/
 - study /ˈstʌdi/
 - take /terk/
 - 1 want /want/
 - watch /wats/
 - wear /wɛr/
 - work /wərk/
- b **3.2** Listen and check.

ACTIVATION Cover the verbs and look at the photos. Test yourself or a partner.

p.22



a car

22

a new phone

<u>home</u>work

Jobs

VOCABULARY BANK

- a Match the words and photos.
 - an accountant /əˈkaʊntnt/
 - an actor /'æktər/
 - an administrator /ədˈmɪnəstreɪtər/
 - 1 an architect /'urkətekt/
 - a chef /sef/ (or cook)
 - a cleaner /klinər/
 - a construction worker /kənˈstrakfn ˈwərkər/
 - a dentist /'dentist/
 - a doctor /'dakter/
 - an engineer /ɛndʒəˈnɪr/
 - a factory worker /'fæktəri 'wərkər/
 - a flight attendant /flast oftendant/
 - a guide /gaɪd/
 - a hair stylist /her 'stailist/
 - a journalist /ˈdʒərnəlɪst/
 - a <u>law</u>yer /ˈlɔyər/
 - a (bank) <u>ma</u>nager /ˈmænɪdʒər/
 - a model /'madl/
 - a mu<u>si</u>cian /myuˈzɪʃn/
 - a nurse /nars/
 - a pilot /'parlet/
 - a police officer /pə'lis 'afəsər/ (or policeman, policewoman)
 - a receptionist /rɪˈsɛpʃənɪst/
 - a salesperson /'serlzpərsn/
 - a soccer player /'sakər 'pleiər/
 - a <u>sol</u>dier /'souldʒər/
 - a taxi driver /'tæksi 'draɪvər/
 - a <u>tea</u>cher /ˈtitʃər/
 - a vet /vɛt/
 - a waiter /'weitər/ / a waitress /'weitrəs/
 - a/an + jobs

We use a / an + job words. She's a model. **NOT** She's model.

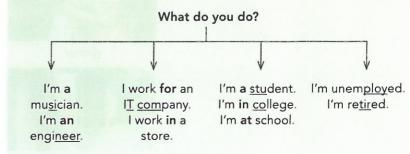
- b 3.10 Listen and check.
- c **3.11** Listen and repeat the sentences. What do *you* do?

ACTIVATION Cover the jobs and look at the photos. In pairs, say what the people do.

She's a journalist.) (He's an engineer.



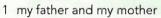




The family

VOCABULARY BANK

- Look at the two family trees. Number the people in relation to Richard.
 - 1 father /'faðər/
 - 2 mother /'mʌðər/
 - 3 brother /'brʌðər/
 - 4 sister /'sıstər/
 - 5 daughter /'dotar/
 - 6 son /san/
 - 7 grandfather /ˈgrænfaðər/
 - 8 grandmother /'grænmʌðər/
 - 9 aunt /ænt/
 - 10 uncle /'ankl/
 - 11 nephew /'nefyu/
 - 12 niece /nis/
 - 13 cousin /kazn/
 - 14 wife /warf/
- Complete 1-5 with children, couple, grandparents, parents, or parents-in-law.



- = my _____/'perants/
- 2 my wife's mother and father
- = my _____ /'perent in le/
- 3 my grandfather and my grandmother = my ______/'grænperənts/
- 4 my son and my daughter
 - = my _____ /'tʃtldrən/
- a husband and wife
 - = a (married) ____ /kapl/



John = Jennifer





Carol = 1 Gary

Sue = Nick



Richard









Hugh

Sarah

- c **14.3** Listen and check your answers to a and b.
 - More family words

my wife's mother = my <u>mo</u>ther-in-law my husband's sister = my sister-in-law my mother's new husband = my stepfather my father's new wife = my stepmother the person I am in a relationship with

ACTIVATION Cover the words. In pairs,

Who's Jennifer?)

ask and answer.

(She's Richard's grandmother.

Who are Sue and Nick?)

= my partner

(They're Richard's aunt and uncle.







Kate = Christopher



Chloe



Jake





Ruby

Oliver





Daily routine

VOCABULARY BANK

a Match the verb phrases and pictures.

Busy Belinda

- take a shower
- have a <u>co</u>ffee
- do the housework
- start work at 8:30
- finish work at 6:30
- get dressed
- 1 wake up at 7:00
- have lunch at work
- go shopping
- go to bed
- have <u>pi</u>zza for <u>di</u>nner
- get home late
- go to work by bus
- put on make-up
- check emails
- get to work

Chill Charlie

- go to <u>Span</u>ish <u>cla</u>sses
- 17 get up at 8:00
- have breakfast
- shave
- go home <u>ear</u>ly
- walk to work
- re<u>lax</u>
- take the dog for a walk
- sleep for eight hours
- make dinner
- take a bath
- see friends
- **b 1.8** Look at the pictures. Listen and check.



- 1 For family and possessions, e.g., I have three children. He has a big house.
- 2 For activities, e.g., I have lunch at 1:30. She has breakfast in the morning.
- 3 For food and drink, e.g., have a coffee, have a sandwich.

ACTIVATION Cover the verb phrases. A describe Belinda's day. Then B describe Charlie's day.

Busy Belinda



Chill Charlie





Time

VOCABULARY BANK

1 TELLING THE TIME



- a Match the clocks and phrases.
 - It's six fifteen. / It's (a) quarter after six.
 - It's six o'clock.
 - 1 It's six forty-five. / It's (a) quarter to seven.
 - It's six ten. / It's ten after six.
 - It's six fifty-five. / It's five to seven.
 - It's six thirty-five. / It's twenty-five to seven.
 - It's six-thirty. / It's half past six.
 - It's three minutes after six.
 - It's six twenty. It's twenty after six.
- b **3.26** Listen and check.

O Time

You can ask for the time in two ways: What time is it? **OR** What's the time?

For times that are not multiples of five, we use minutes, e.g., 6:03 = It's three minutes after six.

When you can't be exact, use about:

"What time do you get up?"

"At about 7:00."

ACTIVATION Cover the phrases and look at the clocks. Ask and answer with a partner.

What time is it? / What's the time? (It's...

p.28

2 EXPRESSIONS OF FREQUENCY

a Complete the expressions.

How often do you see your friends?

1 every /'evri/ day M, T, W, Th, F, S, S week 1, week 2, week 3, etc. 2 every w_____ January, February, March, 3 every m____ e.g., 2017, 2018, 2019, etc. 4 every y_ e.g., only on Mondays 5 once /wans/ a _ e.g., on Mondays and 6 twice /twais/ a ___ Wednesdays e.g., on Mondays, 7 three times a __ Wednesdays, and Fridays e.g., in January, April, July, 8 four times a _ and October

b **4.17** Listen and check.

ACTIVATION Cover the left-hand column. Test yourself.

3 ADVERBS OF FREQUENCY

- a What do the highlighted words mean? Match sentences 1–6 to a–f.
 - 1 b I always / olwerz/ get up at 7:00 during the week.
 - 2 I often /ofn/ go to the movies after work.
 - 3 I usually //yuʒuəli/ finish work at 6:00.
 - 4 sometimes /'samtaimz/ meet a friend for lunch.
 - 5 I hardly ever /hardli 'evər/ go to the theater.
 - 6 I never /'never/ have coffee.
 - a About seven or eight times a month.
 - b I start work at 8:00 every day.
 - c But on Fridays we stop at 3:00.
 - d I don't like it.
 - e Only once or twice a year.
 - f About once or twice a month.
- b 4.18 Listen and check.
- c **4.19** Listen and repeat the highlighted adverbs of frequency.

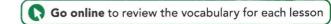


Normally /'normali/ is the same as usually.

I normally get up early. = I usually get up early.

ACTIVATION Cover sentences 1–6 and look at a–f. Can you remember the sentences?





More verb phrases

VOCABULARY BANK

- a Match the verbs and photos.
 - buy /baɪ/
 - call /kɔl/
 - 1 dance /dæns/
 - draw /dra/
 - find /famd/
 - forget /fərˈget/
 - give /grv/
 - hear /hɪr/
 - help /help/
 - leave /liv/
 - look for /luk for/
 - meet /mit/
 - paint /peint/
 - remember /rɪˈmɛmbər/
 - run /rʌn/
 - see /si/
 - send /send/
 - sing /sɪŋ/
 - swim /swim/
 - take /terk/
 - talk /tok/
 - tell /tel/
 - try /trai/
 - use /yuz/
 - wait for /west for/
- b **1** 5.1 Listen and check.

ACTIVATION Cover the verbs and look at the photos. Test yourself or a partner.

p.38









a noise



a song





somebody

the internet

a text message







your keys

a friend

a picture









a bus

a race

a picture

a movie



The weather and dates

VOCABULARY BANK

THE WEATHER

Complete the chart with words from the list.

cloudy /klaudi/ cold /kould/ foggy /fogi/ hot /hat/ raining /reinin/ snowing /snoun/ sunny /'sʌni/ windy /'windi/

What's the weather like?

***	It's ¹ <u>sunny</u> .	25	lt's ⁵
95°	It's ²		lt's 6
	lt's 3	15°	It's ⁷
\Diamond	lt's ⁴	**	lt's ⁸
			L

5.17 Listen and check.

Other adjectives for weather

warm /worm/ = not very hot (opp. cool) wet = raining (opp. dry)

Nouns and adjectives

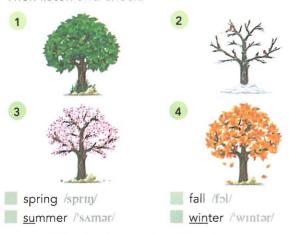
Noun: sun, cloud, wind, fog

Adjective: sunny, cloudy, windy, foggy

Cover the sentences in the chart and look at the pictures. Ask and answer with a partner.

What's the weather like?) (It's sunny.

5.18 Match the seasons and pictures. Then listen and check.



ACTIVATION What's the weather like where you are? What season is it?

G p.42

2 ORDINAL NUMBERS AND THE DATE

a Complete the numbers and words.

1st	first /fərst/
2nd	second /'sekand/
3rd	third /0ərd/
4th	fourth /for0/
5th	fifth /fɪfθ/
6th	/siksθ/
7th	/'sενηθ/
	eighth /eɪtθ/
<u> </u>	ninth /naɪnθ/
10th	/tεnθ/
11th	/r'lενnθ/
	twelfth /twelv0/
13th	/θər¹tinθ/
14th	/fɔr'tinθ/
	twentieth /twentiel/
21st	/'twɛnti fərst/
	twenty-second /'twenti 'sekənd/
23rd	/twenti θərd/
	twenty-fourth /'twɛnti fɔrθ/
30th	/'θərtiəθ/
	thirty-first /'Oərti fərst/

- b \@6.10 Listen and check.
- c Look at how we write and say the date.

Writing and saying the date

We write We say

March 22nd March twenty-second or the twenty-second of March

1/12 January twelfth or

the twelfth of January

Prepositions with years, months, and dates

Use in + years, e.g.,

The Los Angeles Olympics

are in 2028.

Use in + months, e.g., My birthday's in February.

Use on + dates, e.g., The meeting is on Friday,

September 5th.

Saying years

1807 eighteen "oh" seven 1936 nineteen thirty-six

2008 two thousand eight (for years 2000-2010)

2011 two thousand eleven OR twenty eleven

ACTIVATION What's the date today? What's the date tomorrow?

go, have, get

VOCABULARY BANK

a Match the verb phrases and photos.

go

- by bus /bʌs/ (or by car /kɑr/, by plane /pleɪn/)
- 1 for a walk /wak/
- home (from school) /houm/
- out (on Friday night) /aut/
- shopping /'fapin/
- to a restaurant /'restarant/
- to bed (late) /bed/
- to church /tfarts/ (or to mosque /mask/, to temple /templ/, etc.)
- to the beach /bits//
- back (to work) /bæk/
- on vacation /verˈkeɪʃn/

have

- a car /kar/ (or a bike /baɪk/)
- long hair /lon her/
- <u>break</u>fast /'brekfast/ (or lunch /lantʃ/, dinner /'dɪnər/)
- a drink /drink/
- a good time /god taim/
- a sandwich /'sændwitf/
- a sister /'sistər/ (or a brother /'brʌ.ər/)

get

- a <u>news</u>paper /'nuzpeipar/ (= buy or obtain)
- a taxi /tæksi/ (= take)
- an email /'imet/ (= receive)
- dressed /drest/
- home /houm/ (= arrive)
- to the <u>airport</u> /'erport/ (= arrive)
- up /Ap/ (early, late)
- b **17.16** Listen and check.
- c Cover the verb phrases and look at the photos. Test yourself or a partner.

ACTIVATION Take turns saying five things you did yesterday and five things you did last week with *went*, *had*, or *got*.

Yesterday, I got up early. I had breakfast in a café. I went shopping...

p.59

go



have



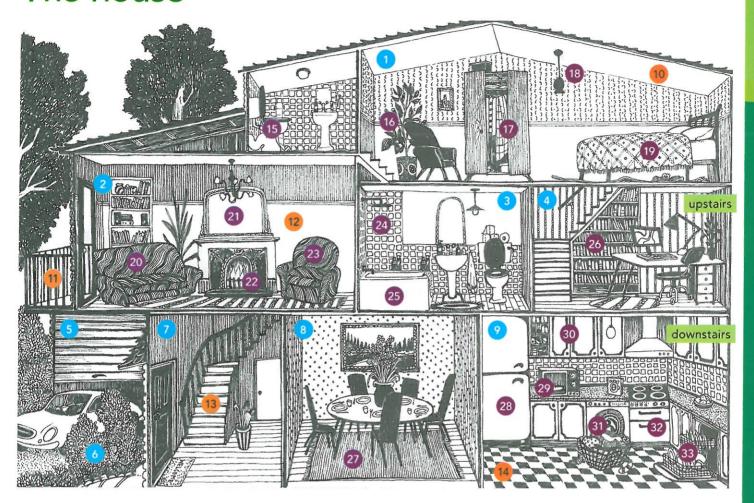
get





The house

VOCABULARY BANK



ROOMS

Match the words and pictures 1-9.

- a bathroom /ˈbæθrum/
- 1 a bedroom /'bedrum/
- a dining room /damin rum/
- a garage /gəˈrɑdʒ/
- a hall /hɔl/
- a kitchen /'krtʃən/
- a living room /'livin rum/
- a study / an office /ˈstʌdi/ /ˈɔfəs/
- a yard /yard/

2 PARTS OF A HOUSE

Match the words and pictures 10-14.

- a balcony /'bælkəni/
- a ceiling /'silm/
- a floor /flor/
- stairs /sterz/
- a wall /wol/

THINGS IN A ROOM

- Match the words and pictures 15-33.
 - an armchair /'armtfer/
 - a bathtub /"bæθtʌb/
 - a bed /bed/
 - a cupboard /'kabard/
 - a dishwasher /'dɪʃwaʃər/
 - a fireplace /'faiərpleis/
 - a light /last/
 - a microwave /'markrawerv/
 - a mirror /mrrər/
 - a plant /plænt/

- a refrigerator / a fridge /ri'fridgəreitər/ /fridg/
- a rug /rʌg/
- a shelf (shelves) /fɛlf/
- a shower /'saua/
- a sofa / a couch /'soufa/ /kautf/
- a stove /stouv/
- a toilet /'torlet/
- a wardrobe //wordroub/
- a washing machine //wasin mə'ʃin/
- ■8.10 Listen and check 1-3.
 - Heat and central air conditioning
 - Heat is a system that makes a house warm. Central air conditioning is a system that makes a house cool.

ACTIVATION Cover the words and look at the pictures. Test

yourself or a partner.





Go online to review the vocabulary for each lesson

Prepositions

VOCABULARY BANK

1 PLACE

- a Match the words and pictures.
 - in /m/ (the wardrobe)
 - in front of /m frant əv/ (the table)
 - on /an/ (the chair)
 - under /'andər/ (the bed)
 - 1 behind /bi'haind/ (the sofa)
 - between /bi'twin/ (the windows)
 - across from /a'kros fram/ (the woman)
 - next to /nekst tu/ (the armchair)
 - over /'ouvar/ (the mirror)
- b **38.22** Listen and check.

ACTIVATION In pairs, point and ask and answer about the pictures.

Where's the ghost?) (He's under the bed.

above and below

above /ə'bʌv/ is similar to over.
below /bɪˈloʊ/ is similar to under.



















2 MOVEMENT

- a Match the words and pictures.
 - from /fram/ (the bedroom) to /tu/ (the bathroom)
 - into /mtu/ (the wardrobe)
 - out of /aut əv/ (the wardrobe)
 - through /θru/ (the window)
 - up /Ap/ (the stairs)
 - down /daun/ (the stairs)
- b **18.23** Listen and check.

ACTIVATION In pairs, point and ask and answer about the pictures.

Where's the ghost going?

(He's going up the stairs.

p.67



13







Food and drink

VOCABULARY BANK

Match the words and photos.







Breakfast

/'brekfast/

- bread /bred/
- butter /'bʌtər/
- cereal /'sɪriəl/
- 1 cheese /tʃiz/
- coffee /'kafi/
- eggs /egz/
- jam /daæm/
- (orange) juice /dʒus/
- milk /mɪlk/
- sugar /'ʃugər/
- tea /ti/
- toast /toust/

Lunch /lants/ or

- dinner /'dɪnər/
- fish /fif/ e.g., salmon, tuna
- herbs /ərbz/
- meat /mit/ e.g., chicken, sausages, steak
- (olive) oil /oɪl/
- pasta /'pasta/
- rice /rais/
- salad /'sælad/
- seafood /'sifud/
- spices /'sparsiz/

Vegetables

/'ved3təblz/

- carrots /'kærəts/
- French fries /frent/ fraiz/
- lettuce /'lɛtəs/
- mushrooms /mafrumz/
- onions /'Anyonz/
- peas /piz/
- peppers /'peparz/
- potatoes /patertouz/
- tomatoes /təˈmeɪtouz/

Fruit /frut/

- apples /'æplz/
- bananas /bəˈnænəz/
- oranges /orandaiz/
- a pineapple /'painæpl/
- strawberries /'stroberiz/

Desserts

/dr'zərts/

- cake /kerk/
- fruit salad /frut 'sælad/
- ice cream /ais 'krim/

Snacks

/snæks/

- candy /'kændi/
 - chocolate /'tfpklət/
- cookies /'kokiz/
- nuts /nats/
- potato chips /po'teitou tsips/
- a sandwich /'sændwitf/

b **19.1** Listen and check.

ACTIVATION Cover the words and look at the photos. Test yourself or a partner.





Places and buildings

VOCABULARY BANK

- a Match the words and photos.
 - a church /tʃərtʃ/
 - a department store /di'partment stor/
 - a hospital /hospitl/
 - a market /market/
 - a park /park/
 - pharmacy /formasi/
 - a police station /pa'lis 'sterfn/
 - a post office /poust 'ofas/
 - a shopping mall /'fapm mol/
 - a supermarket /'super,market/

- 1 a town hall /taun hal/
- an art gallery /grt gæleri/
- a castle /'kæsl/
- a museum /myuˈziəm/
- a theater /ˈθiətər/
- a zoo /zu/
- a bridge /brid3/
- a <u>ri</u>ver /ˈrɪvər/
- a road /roud/
- a square /skwer/
- a street /strit/
- a bus station /bas sterfn/
- a parking lot /parkin lot/
- a train station /trein 'steifn/

Other places of worship (= religious buildings)

- a cathedral /kə'@idrəl/
- a mosque /mask/
- a synagogue /'sɪnəgag/
- a temple /'templ/
- b **10.2** Listen and check.
- Cover the words and look at the photos.
 Test yourself or a partner.

ACTIVATION Ask and answer about places with a partner.

Is there a _____ near where you live / near this school?



















































Irregular verbs

Present	Simple past	Past participle
be /bi/	was /wəz/ were /wər/	been /bin/
become /bi'kam/	became /bi'keim/	become
begin /br/grn/	began /biˈgæn/	begun /bɪˈgʌn/
break /breik/	broke /brouk/	broken /'brooken/
bring /brin/	brought /brot/	brought
build /bɪld/	built /bɪlt/	built
buy /baɪ/	bought /bot/	bought
can /kæn/	could /kud/	-
catch /kætʃ/	caught /kɔt/	caught
come /k.am/	came /kerm/	come
cost /kɔst/	cost	cost
do /du/	did /dɪd/	done /dʌn/
drink /drmk/	drank /drænk/	drunk /draŋk/
drive /draw/	drove /drouv/	driven /'drɪvn/
eat /it/	ate /eɪt/	eaten /ˈitn/
fall /fol/	fell /fɛl/	fallen /ˈfɔlən/
feel /fil/	felt /fclt/	felt
find /famd/	found /faund/	found
fly /flaɪ/	flew /flu/	flown /floun/
forget /fərˈget/	forgot /fərˈgat/	forgotten /fərˈgatn/
get /gɛt/	got /gat/	gotten /'gatn/
give /grv/	gave /geɪv/	given /ˈgɪvn/
go /gou/	went /went/	gone /gan/
have /hæv/	had /hæd/	had
hear /hɪr/	heard /hərd/	heard
know /nou/	knew /nu/	known /noon/

leave /liv/ lost /lost/ lost make /meɪk/ made /meɪd/ made met /mit/ met /met/ met pay /peɪ/ paid /peɪd/ paid put /pot/ put put read /rid/ read /red/ read /red/ run /rʌn/ ran /ræn/ run say /seɪ/ said /sed/ said see /si/ saw /sɔ/ seen /sin/ sent /sent/ sung /sʌn/ sit /sɪt/ sat /sæt/ sat /sæt/ sat /sæt/ sat /sæt/ sat /sæt/ sat /sæt/ spek /spouk/ spoke /spouk/ spoke /spouk/ spoke /spouk/ spoke /spouk/ stand /stænd/ stand/ stand/ stand/ stand/ stand/ stand/ stand/ stand/ took /tuk/ taught /take /teɪk/ took /tuk/ taken /teɪkən/ told /tould/ thought understand /stænd/ woke /wouk/ woken /woukən/ wear /wer/ wore /wər/ written /rɪtn/ win /wɪn/ won /wʌn/ written /rɪtn/ write /raɪt/ wrote /rout/ written /rɪtn/	Present	Simple past	Past participle
make /metk/ meet /mit/ met /met/ met /met/ pay /pet/ put /pot/ put put read /red/ run /ran/ say /set/ said /sed/ said /sed/ see /si/ see /si/ send /send/ sing /sin/ sit /sit/ sat /set/ speak /spik/ speak /spik/ spend /spend/ syend/ stand /stænd/ stand /stænd/ stand /stænd/ swim /swim/ teach /titf/ taught /tot/ taught take /tetk/ took /tuk/ tell /tel/ tunderstand /sndər'stænd/ wake /wetk/ wore /wor/ won /wan/ won /wan/ won /wan/ won paid paid paid paid paid paid paid paid paid	leave /liv/	left /lɛft/	left
meet /mit/ pay /pet/ put /put/ put put read /rid/ run /rʌn/ say /set/ see /si/ see /si/ see /si/ see /si/ sing /sɪn/ sit /sɪt/ sleep /slip/ speak /spik/ speak /spok/ speak /spent/ stand /stænd/ stand /stænd/ stand /stænd/ stand /stænd/ spent /spent/ spent /spent/ spent /spent/ stand /stænd/ stood /stud/ swam /swæm/ teach /titf/ taught /tot/ taught take /terk/ took /tuk/ taken /terkon/ tell /tel/ told /tould/ think /ðɪŋk/ understand /ndar'stænd/ wake /werk/ woke /wouk/ woken /woukan/ won /wan/ won /wan/ won /wan/ won /wan/	lose /luz/	lost /lost/	lost
pay /pei/ put /pot/ put put put put /pot/ put put /pot/ put put put put put read /red/ read /red/ read /red/ run /rxn/ ran /ræn/ run said /sed/ said see /si/ saw /sɔ/ seen /sin/ send /send/ sent /sent/ sent sing /sɪŋ/ sat /sæt/ sat sung /sʌŋ/ sit /sɪt/ sat /sæt/ sat sleep /slip/ slept /slept/ slept spoke /spouk/ spoke /spouk/ spoken /'spoukan/ spend /spend/ spent /spent/ stand /stænd/ stood /stud/ stood swim /swim/ swam /swæm/ swum /swam/ teach /tit// taught /tɔt/ taught /tɔt/ taught /tɔt/ told /tould/ told think /tɨŋk/ thought /tət/ told /tould/ told thought /tət/ understand /shdɔr/stænd/ woke /wouk/ woken /woukan/ wear /wer/ wore /wər/ won /wərn/ win /win/ won /wan/ won	make /meɪk/	made /meid/	made
put /put/ read /rid/ read /rid/ run /rxn/ say /set/ said /sed/ saw /so/ see /si/ see /si/ send /send/ sent /sent/ sent seen /sin/ sent /sent/ sing /sin/ sit /sit/ sat /sæt/ sleep /slip/ speak /spik/ speak /spik/ spent /spent/ spent /spent/ spent /spent/ stand /stænd/ stand /stænd/ swim /swim/ teach /titf/ take /teik/ took /tuk/ tell /tel/ tunderstand /shot/ wake /weik/ woke /wook/ wore /wor/ won /wan/ won /wan/ won	meet /mit/	met /mɛt/	met
read /rid/ run /rʌn/ ran /ræn/ run say /set/ said /sed/ said see /si/ saw /sɔ/ send /sɛnd/ sent /sɛnt/ sang /sæŋ/ sit /sɪt/ sat /sæt/ sleep /slip/ speak /spik/ speak /spent/ spent /spent/ stand /stænd/ stand/ swim /swim/ teach /titf/ take /teik/ took /tuk/ tell /tel/ think /θŋk/ wake /wetk/ woke /wook/ won /wan/ won said said said seen /sin/ sent /said seen /sin/ sent /sent/ sat /sæt/ sat /sæt/ sat /sæt/ sat /set/ sat	pay /peɪ/	paid /peid/	paid
run /rʌn/ say /set/ said /sed/ saw /so/ see /si/ send /scnd/ sent /sent/ sent sing /sin/ sit /sit/ sat /sæt/ speak /spik/ speak /spik/ spend /spend/ spend /spend/ swim /swim/ swim /swim/ teach /titf/ take /teik/ tell /tel/ understand //ndar'stænd/ wake /weik/ wore /wor/ worn /wan/ won said said said seen /sin/ saen /said seen /sin/ sent sung /sʌn/ sung /sʌn/ sat slept /slept/ spoke /spouk/ spoke /spouk/ spoke /spouk/ spent /spent/ spent stood swim /swam/ swam /swam/ swam /swam/ taught taken /teikən/ told /tould/ told thought wore /wor/ worn /worn/ won	put /put/	put	put
say /sei/ see /si/ see /si/ send /send/ sent /sent/ sent /sent/ sent sent sing /sin/ sit /sit/ sleep /slip/ speak /spik/ speak /spik/ spend /spend/ spend /spend/ stand /stænd/ swim /swim/ teach /titf/ take /terk/ tell /tel/ told /tould/ think /think/ understand //Andar'stud/ wake /werk/ wore /wor/ won /wan/ won seen /sin/ seen /sin/ sent seen /sin/ sent seen /sin/ sent seen /sin/ sent sent sung /san/ sung /san/ sung /san/ sung /san/ sung /san/ speke /spouk/ spoke /spouk/ stood swum /swam/ taught taken /terkan/ told thought told thought wore /work/ wore /wor/ wore /wor/ worn /worn/ won /wan/ won	read /rid/	read /red/	read /rɛd/
see /si/ send /scnd/ sent /scnt/ sent /scnt/ sent /scnt/ sing /sin/ sit /sit/ sleep /slip/ speak /spik/ speak /spik/ spend /spend/ spend /spend/ stand /stænd/ stand /stænd/ swim /swim/ teach /titf/ take /terk/ tell /tel/ think /θink/ understand //ndar'stænd/ wake /werk/ wore /wor/ worn /wan/ won seen /sin/ seen /sin/ sent sent sung /san/ sung /san/ sung /san/ sat slept spoken /'spoukan/ spoke /spouk/ spoke /spouk/ spoke /spouk/ spoken /'spoukan/ spoken /'sp	run /rʌn/	ran /ræn/	run
send /send/ sing /sin/ sit /sit/ sat /sæt/ sleep /slip/ speak /spik/ speak /spik/ spend /spend/ spend /spend/ stand /stænd/ swim /swim/ teach /tit// take /teik/ tell /tel/ understand /andar'stænd/ wwake /weik/ wore /war/ won /wan/ sat /sæt/ sat sung /sʌn/ sat /sæt/ speke /spouk/ spoke /spouk/ spoken /spoukan/ taught taken /teikan/ told thought wore/stænd/ woke /wouk/ woken /'woukan/ worn /warn/ won /wan/	say /seɪ/	said /sed/	said
sing /sin/ sit /sit/ sat /sæt/ sleep /slip/ speak /spik/ speak /spik/ spend /spend/ spend /spend/ stand /stænd/ swim /swim/ teach /titf/ take /terk/ tell /tel/ think /θink/ understand wake /wetk/ wore /wor/ win /win/ won /wan/ sat /sæn/ sung /sʌn/ sat sleept speke /spouk/ speke /slept speke /spouk/ speke /spou	see /si/	saw /so/	seen /sin/
sit /sit/ sleep /slip/ speak /spik/ speak /spik/ spend /spend/ spend /spend/ stand /stænd/ swim /swim/ teach /titf/ take /terk/ tell /tel/ understand wake /werk/ wear /wer/ win /win/ sleept /slept/ sleept sleept sleept sleept spoken /'spookan/ spoken /'spookan/ spoken /'spookan/ spent /spent/ spent stood swum /swam/ swam /swæm/ tatoud/ swum /swam/ taught taught taken /'terkan/ told /tould/ told thought wore /work/ wore /work/ wore /wor/ won sat sleept sleept sleept sleept spoken /'spookan/ spoken /'spookan/ taught taught taken /'terkan/ told thought wore /work/ wore /work/ wore /wor/ worn /worn/ won	send /send/	sent /sent/	sent
sleep /slip/ speak /spik/ speak /spik/ spend /spend/ spend /spend/ stand /stænd/ swim /swim/ teach /titf/ take /terk/ took /tok/ think /ðrŋk/ understand /sherk/ wake /werk/ wore /wor/ won /wan/ slept /slept/ spoke /spouk/ spoke /spouk/ spoken /'spoukan/ spoke /spouk/ spoke /spouk/ spoke /spouk/ spoke /spouk/ spoken /'spoukan/ spent stand /stænd/ stood /stud/ stood /swam/ swam /swæm/ taught taught taught taken /'terkan/ told /tould/ told thought wore /work/ wore /work/ wore /worn /worn/ won	sing /sɪŋ/	sang /sæŋ/	sung /sʌŋ/
speak /spik/ spoke /spouk/ spoken /'spoukan/ spend /spend/ spent /spent/ spent stand /stænd/ stood /stud/ swam /swæm/ swam/ taught taught taken /terkan/ told /told /told/ told /told/ told thought /told /told/ thought /told /thought /thought workstand /sndar'stænd/ woke /wouk/ woken /woukan/ wake /werk/ wore /wor/ worn /worn/ worn /worn/ won /wan/ won /wan/ won	sit /srt/	sat /sæt/	sat
spend /spend/ stand/ stood /stud/ stood swim /swim/ swam /swæm/ swum /swam/ swum /swam/ swum /swam/ teach /titʃ/ taught /tot/ taught took /tuk/ taken /'teɪkən/ tell /tel/ told /tould/ told thought /tought /	sleep /slip/	slept /slept/	slept
stand /stænd/ swim /swim/ swam /swæm/ swam /swæm/ teach /titf/ taught /tot/ take /terk/ took /tuk/ told /tould/ think /θιŋk/ thought /θοt/ thought /θοt/ understand /Andər'stænd/ wake /werk/ wore /wor/ worn /worn/ win /win/ won /wan/ stood swum /swam/ taught taught taught taken /'terkən/ told thought thought wold whought woken /'woukən/ worn /worn/ worn /worn/	speak /spik/	spoke /spouk/	spoken /'spoukan/
swim /swim/ teach /titf/ taught /tɔt/ take /teɪk/ took /tuk/ tell /tel/ told /tould/ think /ðɪŋk/ understand /ʌndər'stænd/ wake /weɪk/ woke /wouk/ wore /wor/ won /wan/ won	spend /spend/	spent /spent/	spent
teach /tits// taught /tot/ taught take /terk/ took /tuk/ taken /'terkən/ tell /tel/ told /tould/ told think /θιηκ/ thought /θοτ/ thought understand understood understood /Andər'stænd/ woke /wouk/ woken /'woukən/ wake /werk/ wore /wor/ worn /worn/ win /wɪn/ won /wan/ won	stand /stænd/	stood /stud/	stood
take /terk/ tell /tel/ told /tould/ think /θrŋk/ think /θrŋk/ thought /θɔt/ thought woderstood /Andər'stænd/ wake /werk/ woke /wook/ woken /wookən/ wear /wer/ wor /wan/ won /wan/	swim /swim/	swam /swæm/	swum /swam/
tell /tel/ think /θιŋk/ thought /θɔt/ thought understand understood /Andər'stænd/ wake /weɪk/ woke /wouk/ wore /wor/ worn /wərn/ win /wɪn/ won /wan/ told thought thought whought whought word word word woken /woukən/ worn /wərn/ won	teach /titʃ/	taught /tɔt/	taught
think /θιηk/ thought /θɔt/ thought understand understood understood /ʌndər'stænd/ woke /wouk/ woken /'woukən/ wake /weɪk/ wore /wɔr/ worn /wɔrn/ win /wɪn/ won /wʌn/ won	take /terk/	took /tuk/	taken /terkən/
understand // understood // understood // understood // wake /weik/ woke /wook/ woken // wookan/ wear /wer/ wore /war/ worn /warn/ win /win/ won /wan/ won	tell /tel/	told /tould/	told
/Andər'stænd/ wake /weik/ woke /wook/ woken /'wookən/ wear /wer/ wore /wor/ won /wan/ won	think /θɪŋk/	thought /0at/	thought
wear /wer/ wore /wor/ worn /worn/ win /win/ won /wan/ won			understood
win /win/ won /wan/ won	wake /weik/	woke /wook/	woken /ˈwoukən/
	wear /wɛr/	wore /wɔr/	worn /wərn/
write /rait/ wrote /rout/ written /ritn/	win /wɪn/	won /wan/	won
	write /rait/	wrote /rout/	written /ˈrɪtn/



Vowel sounds

SOUND BANK

	usual spelling		! but also
tree	ee ea e	meet three speak eat me we	people police key niece
fish	i	his this win six big swim	English women busy
ear	eer ere ear	engineer here we're	
cat	а	thanks dance black Japan have tablet	
egg	е	yes help ten pet very red	friend weather breakfast any said
chair	air	airport stairs pair hair square careful	their there wear
clock	o	hot stop doctor job not box	father watch want
saw	al aw	talk small saw draw	water bought fought
horse	or	sport door short	four board
boot	oo u* ew	school food June use new flew	do fruit juice shoe

	usual spelling	! but also	
bull	u full put oo good book look cook	could would woman	
tourist	A very unusual sound euro Europe sure plural	I.	
up	u bus lunch ugly run lucky cut	come brother son does young	
computer	Many different spellings. /a/ is always unstressed. umbrella America famous second ago		
bird	er her verb ir first third ur nurse turn	learn work world word	
ew owl	ou out thousand house count ow how down		
phone	o* old home close don't oa road toast	slow low	
car	ar party charger start far		
train	a* name make ai rain paint ay play day gray	break steak great eight they	
boy	oi coin noise toilet oy enjoy unemployed		
bike	i* nine twice y my why igh high night	buy	

^{*} especially before consonant + e







Consonant sounds

SOUND BANK

	usual spelling	! but also
parrot	p pilot Peru paper sleep pp apple happy	
bag	be butter table number jobbb hobby	
key	c credit card actor k kitchen like ck black back	archictect school
girl	g green get argue big gg eggs bigger	
flower	f Friday fifteen wife ph photo alphabet ff office coffee	
vase	v very eleven live travel river love	of
tie	t tea take student sit tt letter bottle	liked dressed
dog	d dance understand bad read dd address middle	played tired
snake	s sister stops ss stress actress ce/ci police nice city	
zebra	z zero zoo Brazil s,se music please dogs watches	
shower	sh shopping shoes Spanish fish ti (+ vowel) station information	sugar sure
television	si (+ on) decision occasion	usually garage

	l an alling	I hut also
	usual spelling	! but also
thumb	th think thirty throw bathroom fourth tenth	
mother	th the these then that other with	
chess	ch cheap children church tch watch match t (+ ure) picture adventure	
jazz jazz	j January jacket July enjoy dge bridge fridge	German manager
leg	I,le like little plane girl II small spelling	
right	r rice rich problem try rr sorry terrible	write wrong
witch	w window wait Wednesday twenty wh why when	one once
yacht	y yellow yesterday young yes before u use university music	
monkey	m man Monday money swim mm summer swimming	
nose	n no never nine ran nn dinner thinner	know
singer	ng England language song thing long going	think bank
house	h happy hungry hotel hall head behind	who whose

voiced

unvoiced

Oxford University Press is the world's authority on the English language.

As part of the University of Oxford, we are committed to furthering English language learning worldwide.

We continuously bring together our experience, expertise and research to create resources such as this one, helping millions of learners of English to achieve their potential.



digi ZABAN

American English File gets you talking

90% of teachers who took part in an Oxford Impact study found that American English File Improves students' speaking skills.

Use your Workbook to:

- practice Grammar, Vocabulary, and Pronunciation from each lesson.
- practice all the language from the Practical English lessons.
- review what you know with cumulative Can you remember...? exercises.



americanenglishfileonline.com

- · downloadable pronunciation audio
- skills practice:
- more language practice

FOR STUDENTS

- · Student Book with Online Practice
- · Multi-Packs with Online Practice
- Workbook
- English File Say It app for pronunciation practice

FORTEACHERS

- Teacher's Guide with Teacher Resource Center
- Classroom Presentation Tool
- · Class DVD
- Class Audio CDs













OXFORD UNIVERSITY PRESS

www.oup.com/elt

English Sounds Pronunciation Chart based on an original idea and design by Paul Seligson and Carmen Dolz.



